Foreword

Thank you for choosing BYD. To better use and maintain the vehicle, please read this manual carefully and keep it for future reference.

Special instructions: BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. recommends that you choose genuine spare parts and use, maintain, and repair the vehicle in accordance with this manual. The use of non-genuine spare parts to replace or modify the vehicle will affect the performance of the entire vehicle, especially its safety and durability. Vehicle damage and performance issues caused thereby will not be covered by the warranty. In addition, vehicle modifications may also violate national laws and regulations and local government regulations.

Thank you again for choosing BYD. Your valuable comments and suggestions are welcome. To enjoy better services, please provide your accurate contact information. If there is any change to the information, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in a timely manner to update the information in the system. You are also advised to pay attention to the relevant national laws and regulations and local policies, and register the vehicle as soon as possible; otherwise vehicle registration may fail.

The descriptions marked with the asterisk (*) in this manual are specific to only some model configurations, and applicable only when the vehicle has these configurations. If there is any difference with the vehicle you purchased, the configuration of the actual vehicle shall prevail.

Pay attention to the “WARNING”, "CAUTION”, and "REMINDER" symbols in this manual, and follow the instructions carefully to avoid injury or damage. These symbols are defined as follows:

WARNING

Items that must be observed to ensure personal safety.

CAUTION

Items that must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle.

REMINDER

Items that must be observed to facilitate maintenance.

is a safety mark to indicate an operation that should not be performed or an event that should not happen.

This manual is expected to help you use the product correctly, and does not provide any description of the configuration and software version of this product. For details about the product configuration and software version, please refer to the contract (if any) related to this product, or consult the dealer who sold the product to you.

Copyright © BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced, copied, stored, translated, or transmitted electronically or in any other form without prior written consent and authorization of BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd.

All rights reserved

Illustration Index

Exterior.....7

Dashboard..... 8

Doors.....9

Interior..... 10

Safety

Seat Belts.....12

Seat Belt Overview..... 12

Using Seat Belts.....12

Airbags..... 16

Airbag Overview..... 16

Airbag Types..... 17

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions.....19

Child Restraint System.....22

Child Restraint Systems..... 22

Installing Child Restraint Systems..... 23

Dual-Mode System Working Mode..... 28

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode.....28

Selecting Working Mode of Dual-Mode System..... 29

Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System..... 30

Anti-theft Alarm System.....32

Anti-theft Alarm System.....32

Sentry Mode.....33

Sentry Mode..... 33

Data Collection and Processing..... 34

Data Collection and Processing.....34

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster..... 40

Instrument Cluster View.....40

Instrument Cluster Indicators.....41

Controller Operations

Doors and Keys.....54

Keys.....54

Locking/Unlocking.....58

Power Sliding Doors.....67

Smart Access and Start System..... 71

Mechanical Child Protection Lock..... 73

Seats.....74

Seat Precautions..... 74

Front seats..... 75

Second-Row Seats.....76

Memory System*..... 79

Seat Ventilation/Heating*..... 80

Third-Row Seats..... 81

Head Supports.....84

Steering Wheel..... 86

Steering Wheel Switches.....86

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....89

Wipers..... 89

Wiper Switch.....89

Replacing Wiper Blades..... 91

Mirrors.....92

Rearview Mirror..... 92

Side Mirrors.....93

Switches..... 94

Light Switches..... 94

Driver's Door Switches..... 96

Passengers' Window Switches.....97

Automatic Window Closing*..... 98

Hazard Warning Light Switch.....98

Sunroof Switch..... 98

Emergency Call (E-Call).....101
Second-Row Control Panel*..... 102
Interior Light Switches.....103

Using and Driving

Charging/Discharging..... 106
Charging Instructions.....106
Charging.....110
Discharging Instructions*.....116
Target SOC Setting..... 118
Driving Range Display..... 120
Charging Port Immobilizer System.....121
Batteries..... 122
High-Voltage Battery..... 122
Low-Voltage Battery.....124
Operating Tips.....125
Break-in Period.....125
Trailer Towing.....126
Driving Safety Precautions.....127
Vehicle Use Suggestions..... 127
Fuel..... 128
Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life.....130
Carrying Luggage..... 131
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning.....132
Wading into Water.....132
Fire Prevention.....133
Starting and Driving.....135
Starting the Vehicle..... 135
Driving.....136
Fuel-Efficient Driving.....137
DiSus-C*.....138
High-Speed Tire Blowout Stability Control*..... 139
Gear Shift Controls..... 140
Electronic Parking Brake (EPB).....141
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH).....143
Driving Precautions.....145
Driver Assistance..... 147
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*.....147
Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*..... 151
Forward Collision Warning (FCW) and Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)*.....154
Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) and Front Cross Traffic Brake (FCTB)*..... 157
Lane Departure Assist (LDA)*.....158
Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)*.....160
AFL indicator*.....162
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)*.....163
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)*..... 164
Blind Spot Assist (BSA)*..... 165
Driver Monitoring System (DMS)..... 168
Occupant Monitoring System..... 169
Tire Pressure Monitoring.....170
Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS)*..171
Around View Monitor (AVM)*.....172
Parking Assist*.....174
Driving Safety Systems.....177
Child Presence Detection (CPD).....182

In-Vehicle Devices

Infotainment System..... 186
Infotainment Touchscreen.....186
Infotainment System Screen..... 187
Settings.....187
Scenario Mode*..... 188
Gestures and Responses.....189

OTA Updates*.....190
Voice Assistant.....191
Bluetooth Call.....191
Audio*.....192
My Car*.....192
Other Applications.....192
Phone Projection*.....193
In-Vehicle Cinema System*.....197
A/C System.....201
A/C Panel.....201
Climate Controls.....202
Function Definitions.....203
A/C Settings.....206
Vents.....206
BYD App*.....207
About BYD App.....207
Account Registration.....207
Vehicle Condition and Control.....207
Individual Center and Vehicle Management.....208
Refrigerator*.....208
Refrigerator*.....208
Storage.....212
Door Bins.....212
Bill Box.....212
Storage Cubies*.....212
Glove Box.....213
Center Console Cubby.....213
Cup Holder.....213
Seatback Pockets.....215
Phone Holder*.....215
Other Devices.....215
Sun Visor.....215
Grab Handles.....216
Clothes Hooks.....216
On-board Power Supply.....217
USB Ports.....217
SD Card Slot.....218
Wireless Phone Charger*.....218
Tray Table*.....220

Maintenance

Maintenance Precautions.....224
Maintenance Cycle and Items.....224
Regular Maintenance.....229
Regular Maintenance.....229
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention.....231
Paint Maintenance Tips.....231
Exterior Cleaning.....232
Interior Cleaning.....234
Power Sliding Door Maintenance.....235
Self-Maintenance.....236
Self-Maintenance.....236
Sunroof Maintenance.....238
Vehicle Storage.....239
Hood.....240
Engine Maintenance.....241
Coolant System.....242
Braking System.....242
Washer System.....243
Fuel Filter.....243
A/C System.....244
Wiper Blades.....244
Tires.....245
Fuses.....248

When Faults Occur

When Faults Occur.....250
Reflective Vest.....250

If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted.....250
If a High Voltage Fault Occurs..... 250
If the Vehicle Cannot Be Powered on... 250
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving.....251
If the Engine is Overheated.....251
If the Vehicle Needs Towing.....252
If a Tire Goes Flat or Is Underinflated...254

Specifications

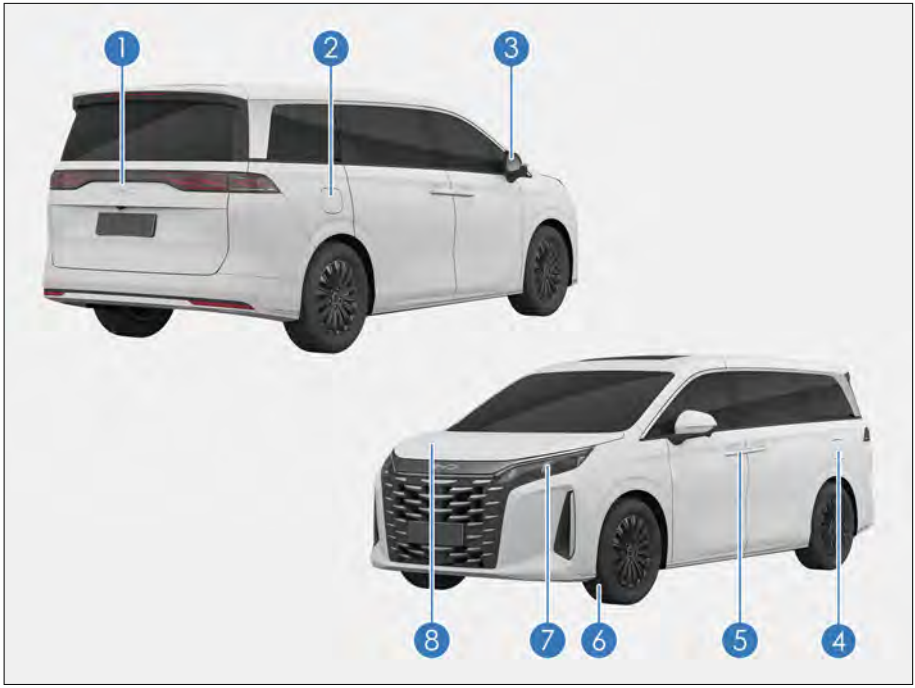
Vehicle Data..... 260
Vehicle Data.....260
Other Information..... 264
Vehicle Identification..... 264
Warning Labels.....265
Transponder Mounting Position.....267
Declarations of Conformity..... 268
Declarations of Conformity.....268

Abbreviations

Abbreviations.....275

Illustration Index

Exterior



1 Trunk ***P62***

2 Check before Charging ***P110***

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable* ***P110***

Using AC Charging Piles* ***P112***

Using DC Charging Piles* ***P114***

3 Side Mirrors ***P93***

4 Refueling ***P128***

5 Locking/Unlocking Doors ***P59***

6 Tire ***P245***

If a Tire Goes Flat ***P254***

7 Lights ***P238***

Light Switches ***P94***

8 Hood ***P240***

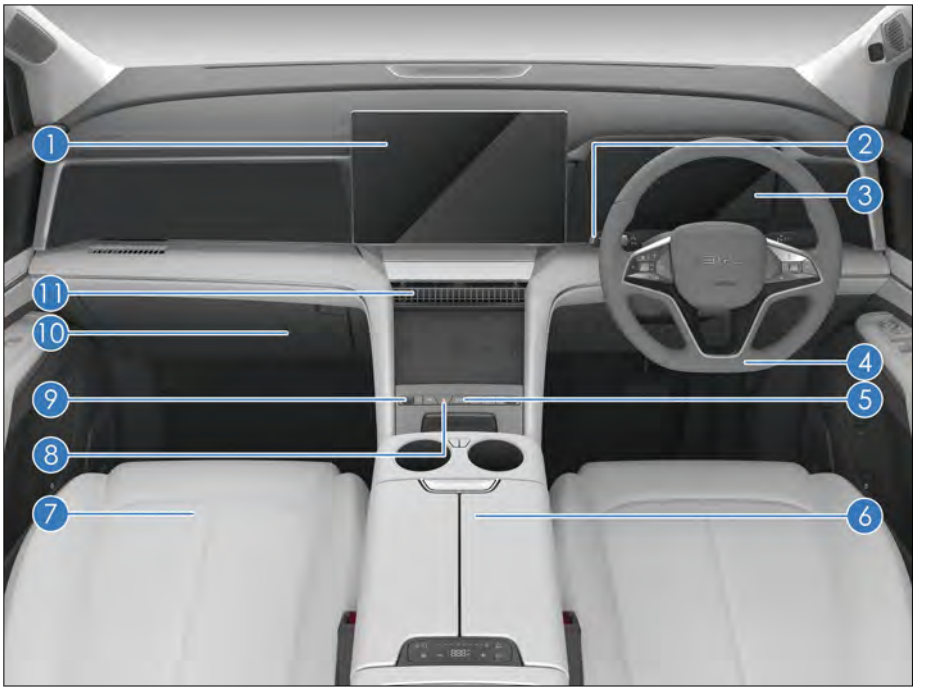
Engine Oil ***P241***

Coolant System ***P242***

Braking System ***P242***

Washer ***P243***

Dashboard



1 Infotainment Touchscreen ***P186***

2 Light Switches ***P94***

Wiper Switch ***P89***

3 Instrument Cluster ***P40***

4 Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually ***P89***

Steering Wheel Switches ***P86***

5 START/STOP Button ***P135***

6 Center Console Cubby ***P213***

7 Front Seats ***P75***

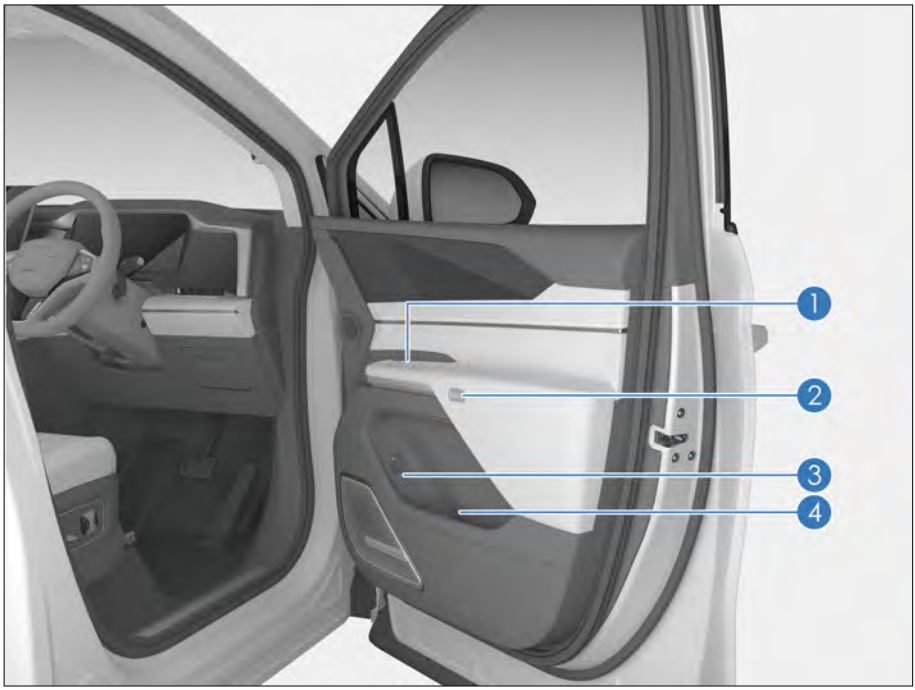
8 Hazard Warning Light Switch ***P98***

9 Mode Button ***P29***

10 Glove Box ***P213***

11 Front Vents ***P206***

Doors



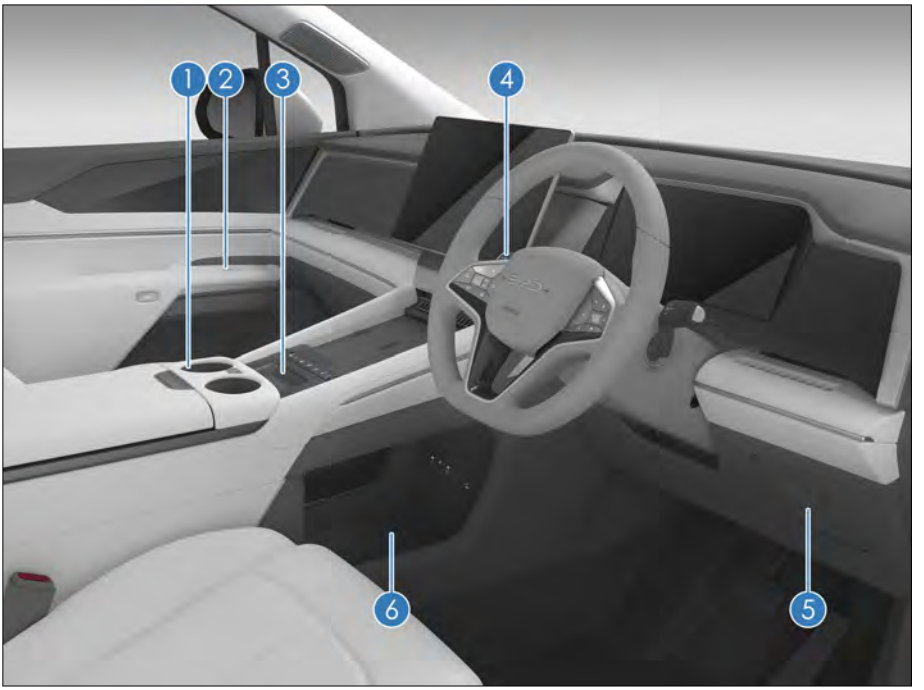
1 Power Window Switches ***P96***

2 Interior Door Open Button ***P59***

3 Locking/Unlocking the Trunk ***P62***

4 Door Bins ***P212***

Interior



1 Cup Holder ***P213***

2 Front Passenger Side Window Control Switch ***P97***

3 Front Cubby ***P212***

4 Light Switches ***P94***

Wiper Switches ***P89***

5 Bill Box ***P212***

6 Center Console Cubby ***P212***

01 SAFETY

Seat Belts..... 12
Airbags..... 16
Child Restraint System..... 22
Dual-Mode System Working Mode...28
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 32
Sentry Mode.....33
Data Collection and Processing..... 34

Seat Belts

Seat Belt Overview

Studies have shown that proper use of seat belts can significantly reduce casualties in emergency braking, sudden steering or collisions. Read the following information carefully and observe it strictly.

WARNING

- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up to prevent personal injury or even death in emergency braking or in a collision.
- The seat belts are designed for adults and are not intended for children. Make sure to choose an appropriate child restraint system according to your child's age and size (see ***P22*** in this chapter).
- If a seat belt is damaged or malfunctions, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.

- BYD has highly emphasized that all occupants should always fasten their seat belts while in the vehicle to prevent serious injury or death.
- Children are encouraged to travel on the rear seats and must be buckled up in appropriate child restraint systems. In case of emergency braking or a collision, unprotected children may be seriously injured and their lives may be endangered. Likewise, do not allow children to ride on someone's lap. This will render the children not adequately protected.

Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR)Function *

- When the driver turns sharply or brakes suddenly, when there is a collision, or when the occupant leans forward too quickly, the seat belt automatically locks to effectively restrain and protect the occupant.
- When the vehicle travels smoothly, seat belts are pulled out and retracted as the occupants move slowly and smoothly, allowing the occupants to move freely.
- If the seat belt locks due to sudden retraction, pull on the seat belt webbing to create retractable slack in order to pull out the seat belt.

Pretensioner and Force Limiter*

When a severe front collision occurs and the triggering conditions of the pretensioner are met, the pretensioner quickly retracts part of the seat belt and locks it to improve the protection of the occupant. The force limiter limits the seat-belt restraint force to the occupant's body to a certain extent so as to avoid injury to the occupant due to an excessive restraint force.

WARNING

- If the pretensioner function is activated, the seat belt must be replaced.

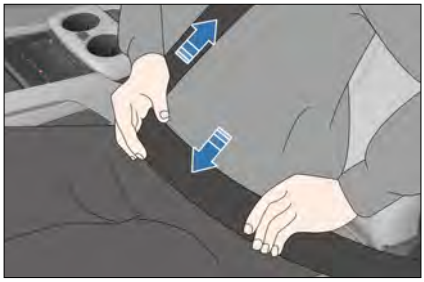
Using Seat Belts

1. Adjust the seat position and seatback angle (see ***P75***).
2. Adjust the position of the three-point seat belt.

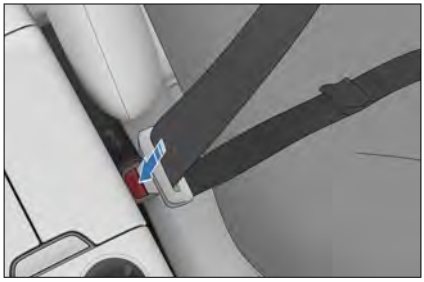
- Keeping a proper sitting posture, pull the seat belt out so that it is diagonally

across the chest. The belt should not go under the arm or across the back of the neck.

- Keep the lap section of the belt as close as possible to the hips.



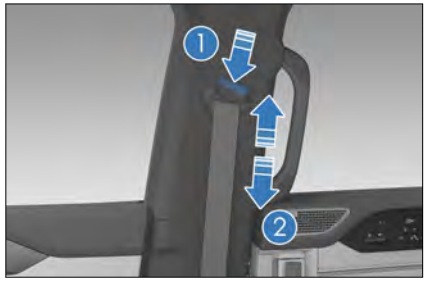
3. Insert the latch into the buckle until it clicks, and then pull it back to make sure it is firmly locked. Do not fasten the belt with any part of the strap twisted.



4. Adjust the height of the (front) seat belts for optimum comfort and protection.

   ① Press the adjuster release button.

   ② Move the adjuster up or down to the intended position. Release the button to lock the adjuster.



5. Pull the belt firmly to check that the adjuster is locked.

WARNING

- The shoulder belt should cross the centre of the shoulder. The seat belt should be far from the neck and not liable to slip from the shoulder; otherwise, it cannot function well in the event of emergency braking or accident and may even cause severe injury.
- The lap belt should be positioned as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury due to the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The seat belt should be fitted tight to the body for better protection.

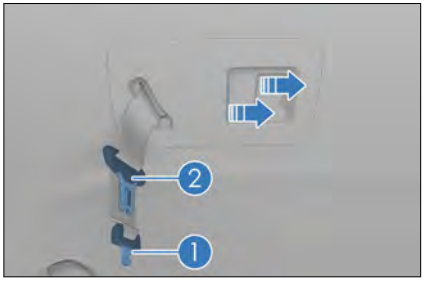
6. Unlock the seat belt.

- Press the red unlock button on the buckle. The latch plate pops out, and the seat belt automatically retracts.
- If the seat belt does not retract smoothly and automatically, pull it out and check whether it is twisted.

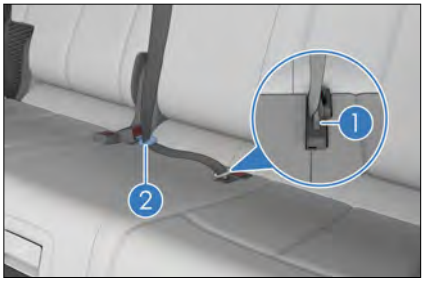


Using the Three-Row Middle Seat Belt

- Pull out small buckle latch ① and latch ② from the slot in the roof.

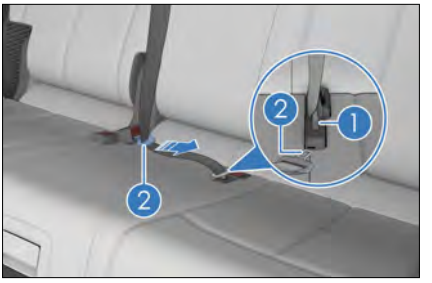


- Align small buckle latch ① with the buckle and ensure that the seat belt is not twisted. Insert small buckle latch ① into the buckle.
- Insert latch ② into the other buckle until it clicks.
- Pull on the belt to confirm that the latches are securely fastened.



Releasing the third-row center seat belt

- Press the red button beside the buckle, and latch ② releases automatically.
- Insert buckle latch ② into the slot on the side of the buckle, and the small latch ① then releases automatically.
- Hold the seat belt to allow it to retract slowly.



WARNING

- One seat belt is for one occupant only. Do not allow multiple occupants (including children) to share one seat belt.
- Avoid traveling with the seatback leaning too far back. The more upright the seat back, the better the protection.
- Make sure that no seat belt or its spring bolt/buckle becomes pressed by the door; otherwise, the seat belt may be damaged.
- Check the seat belts regularly for cuts, wear, looseness, and other abnormalities. If any problem is found, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for confirmation and handling. Until then, do not use the corresponding seat.
- Do not remove, disassemble, or modify the seat belts.

WARNING

- After an accident, have the seat belts checked at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Use an approved model whenever you replace the seat belt.
- In the event of a serious accident, even if there is no apparent damage, the seat belt should be replaced along with the seat assembly. The airbag system should also be thoroughly inspected.
- Pregnant women need to fasten the seat belts properly and position the lap belt as low as possible around the hips to avoid serious injury from the intense lap belt forces against the abdomen in an accident.
- The method of wearing a second- and three-row seat belt is the same as that for a front seat belt. For normal functioning of the rear seat belt, please ensure that its latch is inserted into the corresponding buckle during use. The driver should remind passengers to wear seat belts properly.
- Do not insert foreign objects such as coins and clips into the buckle as they prevent proper connection between the latch and buckle.
- Before driving, make sure all occupants are properly buckled up.

Seat Belt Reminders

If any occupant has not buckled up after the vehicle is started, visual and audible alarms go off and continue until the corresponding seat belt is properly fastened.

- Seat belt reminder main indicator
  - Any unfastened seat belt will trigger the main indicator to flash.
- Unfastened belt display
  - The indicator for the seat with unfastened seat belt lights up when the seat belt at any position is not fastened and the alarm is triggered.
- Unfastened seat belt reminder for front and second-row passengers
  - If the driver or occupants in the front passenger seat or second-row have not buckled up after the ignition is switched on, the seat belt reminder indicator and the indicator associated with the corresponding seat light up. If the seat belt remains unfastened while driving, in addition to the reminder indicator, an audible alarm is given to alert the driver and the occupants.
- Seat belt reminder for third-row passengers
  - When the gear is in the "ON/OK" position, if there are occupants in the third-row seats and their sear belts are not buckled up, the seat belt reminder indicator will light up, and the indicator associated with the corresponding seat light up. If the occupants remain unbuckled while the vehicle is in motion, the seat belt warning lights will remain illuminated and an audible warning will sound to alert the driver and passengers.
- When the driver and all the passengers fasten their seat belts, the seat belt reminder indicator turns off and all indicators displayed for the corresponding seats turn off.

WARNING

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Do not use the corresponding seat until the functions return to normal.
- When driving, make sure all occupants have their seat belts properly fastened to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or in a collision.

Airbags

Airbag Overview

- The airbag system is a part of supplemental restraint system (SRS) and also a supplement to seats and seat belts. When the vehicle is involved in a serious collision and the airbag system meets its deployment conditions, relevant airbags will rapidly deploy, and along with seat belts, provide additional protection for heads and chests of the occupants, reducing likelihood of personal injuries or death.
- Airbags are divided into front and side types according to the type of collision in which they are designed to deploy. The front airbags include a driver airbag and a front passenger airbag, while the side airbags include seat side airbags, a far side airbag, and side curtain airbags.
- As an integral part of the vehicle's passive safety protection system, the airbag system is not a replacement for seat belts and must be used in combination with seat belts to maximize protection.

WARNING

- Occupants must sit in a proper position to maximize the protection provided by seat belts and the airbag system.
- Do not disassemble or assemble airbag components.
- Non-BYD genuine seat covers may worsen the airbag performance or result in injury.
- Do not place anything between the side airbag and the occupant.
- Do not apply excessive force to the side of seats equipped with side airbags.
- After a collision, even if the airbag module did not deploy and the pretensioner did not lock the seat belt, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for airbag testing.

Airbag warning light

- The airbag system is monitored by the ECU and has a self-diagnostic function. The system status is indicated by the warning light on the instrument cluster.
- With the ignition on, if the airbag warning light stays on for about five seconds and then disappears, the system is running smoothly.

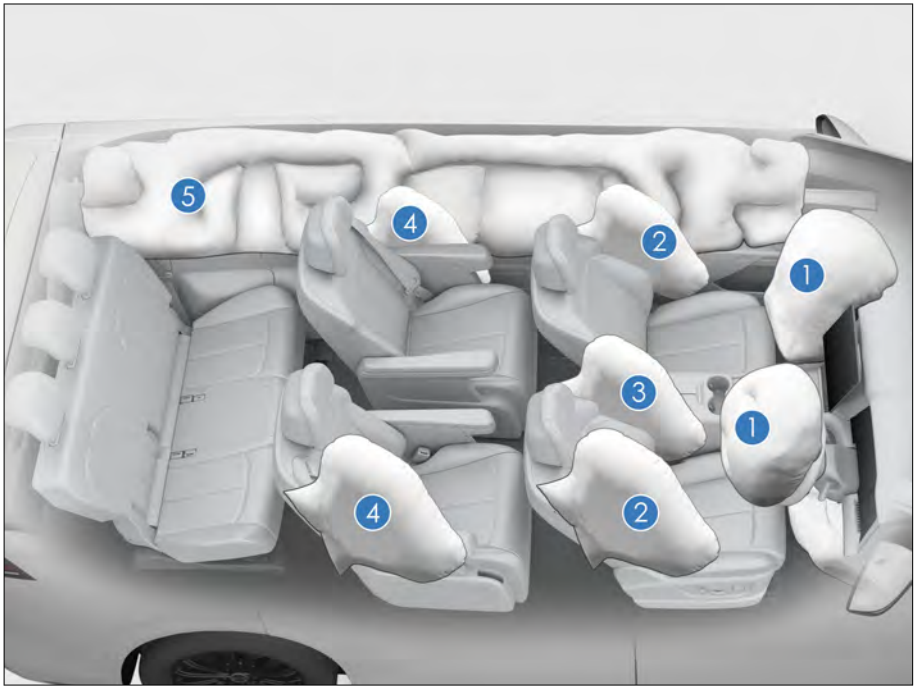
WARNING

- The airbag warning light stays on in the presence of certain system faults. If this light stays on, head to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Otherwise, airbags may not work properly.

WARNING

- In case of water ingress (such as wet carpet or vehicle submersion) or vehicle damage from water, do not switch the ignition on and make sure to have the low-voltage battery disconnected. Failure to do so risks serious injury or death due to airbag deployment.

Airbag Types



1 Driver and Front Passenger Airbags
2 Front Side Airbags
3 Far Side Airbag
4 Second-row seat side airbags*
5 Curtain Airbags

Driver and Front Passenger Airbags

The driver airbag is mounted inside the steering wheel and the front passenger airbag is mounted inside the dashboard, both marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to reduce the risk of injury.

Front airbag deployment

- In moderate to severe frontal crashes, a sensor detects a sharp deceleration and sends a signal to the ECU to trigger the front airbags.

- When there is a frontal crash, the seat belt secures the occupant's lower body and torso and the airbag cushions and protects the occupant's head and chest.
- When the severity of the impact does not reach the airbag deployment threshold, seat belts provide enough protection.
- The front airbag deflates immediately after inflation, without affecting the driver's vision and ability to operate the steering wheel or other controls.
- Airbags can inflate rapidly when triggering conditions are satisfied to further protect drivers and occupants in an accident.
- A loud noise will be heard when the airbag deploys. It will not cause injury, but it may cause tinnitus or temporary deafness.
- The deployment of airbags may release smoke and dust. Although these substances are non-toxic, passengers with respiratory conditions may experience temporary discomfort. If the discomfort is severe, seek medical attention immediately.

WARNING

- No accessories, such as telephone holders, cups, ashtrays, may be installed on airbag covers or within their action range. Otherwise, airbag deployment will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Seat Side Airbags*

The seat side airbags* are mounted on the outside of seatbacks, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected with the ignition on and the triggering conditions are met, the side airbag deploys to protect the occupant's chest.

WARNING

- Do not allow the seatback to become wet, as moisture may impair the proper operation of the side airbags.
- Do not cover or replace the seatback covers by yourself. Using unsuitable or non-genuine seatback covers may interfere with side airbag deployment.
- When a side impact meets the system's deployment conditions, the side airbag on the impacted side will deploy.
- For optimal side airbag protection, occupants must have their seat belts fastened and sit upright against the seatback.

Far Side Airbag

The far side airbag is mounted in the inner edge of the driver's seat, marked with "AIRBAG". When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the airbag deploys to protect the heads and shoulders of the driver and the front passenger.

- If the impact occurs on the front passenger's side, the far side airbag deploys even if there is no passenger in the seat.
- For optimum far side airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Curtain Airbags

The left and right side curtain airbags are mounted at the junctions of the side wall and the ceiling, marked with

"AIRBAG" on the B and C pillars. When a moderate to severe impact is detected while the vehicle is powered on and the triggering conditions are met, the side curtain airbag deploys to protect the head of the occupants.

WARNING

- For optimum curtain airbag protection, the occupant must have their seat belt fastened and sit in an upright position.

Airbag Triggering Conditions and Precautions

Airbag Triggering Conditions

- In the event of a vehicle collision, whether an airbag will be triggered is decided by factors such as the amount of collision energy, accident type, collision angle, obstacle type, and vehicle speed. The airbag system may be triggered in special collisions.
- The airbag system does not always work in any accident, and generally it will not be triggered in the event of a minor frontal collision, side collision, rear collision or rollover. In this case, the driver and passengers are protected by their properly fastened seat belts.
- Determinants of airbag system triggering: The Electronic Control Unit (ECU) captures the deceleration curve and other signals of the vehicle during a crash. If they are lower than the threshold values set in the ECU, the airbag system will not be triggered even if the vehicle is seriously deformed in the accident.
- The ECU of the BYD airbag system has been set up with considerations of common misuse and road conditions. However, due to the increasing changes in causes and forms of vehicle collisions, for your safety, please strictly follow this user manual, use the vehicle correctly, and avoid its misuse. Otherwise, there is no guarantee that the airbags will achieve their expected effect.

Rollover Protection System*

- If the vehicle experiences a side rollover accident that triggers the rollover protection system, the seat side airbags*, far side airbag, curtain airbag, and seat belt pretensioners will be activated to protect the occupants and mitigate potential injuries.

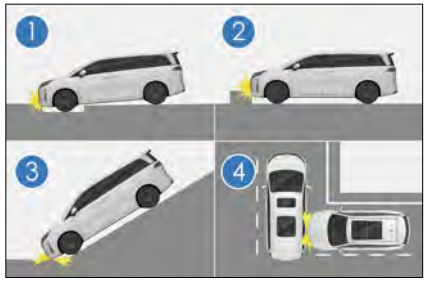
Cases When Airbags May Be Deployed

① The vehicle's nose hits the ground when crossing a deep groove.

② The vehicle hits a bump or curbstone.

③ The vehicle's nose hits the ground when going down a steep slope.

④ One side of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.



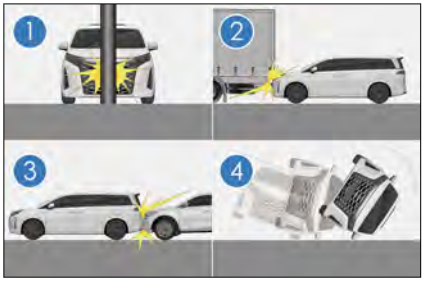
Cases When Airbags May Not Be Deployed

① The vehicle hits a concrete column, tree, or other slim objects.

② The vehicle goes under a truck or another large vehicle.

③ The tail of the vehicle is hit by another vehicle.

④ The vehicle rolls over.

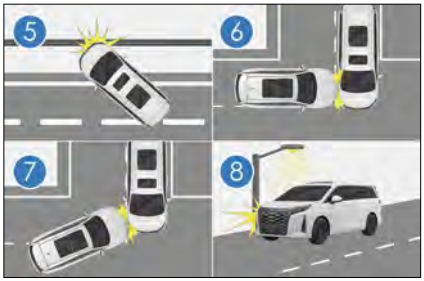


⑤ The vehicle hits a wall or a vehicle at a side other than the front side.

⑥ Parts other than the passenger compartment receive side impact.

⑦ The lateral side of the vehicle is hit diagonally.

⑧ The lateral side of the vehicle hits a columnar object.



WARNING

- Airbags are designed for specific models. Any changes to suspension, tire size, bumpers, chassis and factory-equipped devices may adversely affect the airbag system. Users must not use any parts of the airbag system on other vehicle models; doing so may lead to failure of the airbag system.
- Drivers should maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between their chest and the steering wheel, in order for the system to provide the most effective protection.
- After the airbag system deploys, hot gas resulting from the reaction will be discharged from the airbag vent port. Avoid touching any parts and keep the correct posture of holding the steering wheel, otherwise skin burns may occur.
- Fasten your seat belt and sit properly while the vehicle is in motion. If the seat belt is not fastened, and the occupant is leaning forward or sitting improperly, airbag deployment can increase the risk of injury.
- Do not paste stickers, cover or decorate the button area or the center cap of the steering wheel, the surface of the dashboard at and near the location of the airbag, the surface of A, B, and C-pillar trims, or the surface at and near the location of seat side airbags with any object. Clean these surfaces with a dry or damp cloth, without applying too much pressure.
- Children are not to be seated unprotected, nor are they to ride sitting on an adult's lap, to prevent serious injury or even casualty caused by airbag deployment.
- Side airbags and side curtain airbags deploy quickly with high impact forces. Occupants must

WARNING

not lean against the doors of vehicles equipped with these airbags while these vehicles are in motion, because doing so may result in serious injuries or even death.

- Do not place any other accessories or items within the action range of side curtain airbags, including the windshield, side door glass, A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim, C-pillar trim and auxiliary handles. When the side curtain airbag deploys, the accessories or items will be thrown by the impact force from the side air curtain airbag, or the side curtain airbag may not deploy normally, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- When transferring vehicle ownership, make sure to pass on all of the vehicle's documents and keep the new ownership informed of airbag conditions.
- Do not modify or replace seats or trims of the seats with side airbags. These changes may prevent normal deployment of side airbags, and thereby cause airbag system failure or unintended deployment of side airbags, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or repair the A-pillar trim, ceiling, B-pillar trim or C-pillar trim, which contain side curtain airbags. These changes can cause failure of the airbag system or accidental deployment of curtain airbags, which may cause serious injury or even death.

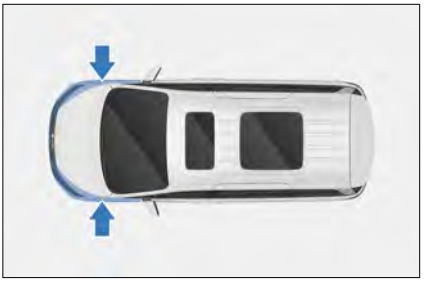
WARNING

- Do not change any component of the airbag system, including any corresponding label. It is recommended that any operation done to the airbags be performed by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Airbags can only provide one-time accident protection. Once the airbag is triggered or damaged, the airbag system must be replaced.
- Follow safety regulations and procedures related to the scrapping of parts of the vehicle or its airbag system.
- The airbag system has strong anti-interference and anti-disturbance resistance to electromagnetic fields around it. However, to avoid accidents, do not use the vehicle in an electromagnetic environment that violates national regulations.
- The airbag system of this vehicle is designed with full consideration of common misuses and road conditions. However, in order to avoid accidents, do not have the bottom of the vehicle impacted or drive roughly in harsh road conditions.
- This vehicle's airbag system has been fully verified to match the vehicle's original wiring harness system. Any wiring harness modification or alteration may cause the airbags to deploy mistakenly under normal conditions or fail to deploy in the event of a collision.

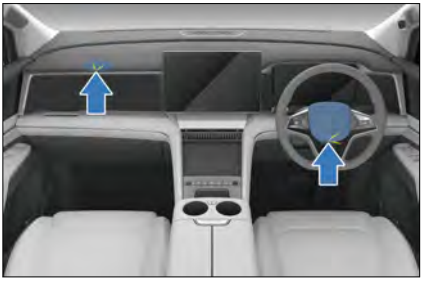
It is recommended that you contact a BYD authorized dealer or service

provider immediately if any of the following situations occurs.

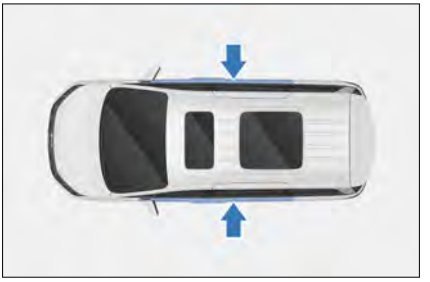
- Any airbag has deployed.
- The airbag fault warning light comes on abnormally on the instrument cluster.
- There is a collision with the front of the vehicle (highlighted area shown), but the airbags do not deploy.



- The airbag cover (highlighted area shown) has been scratched, cracked or otherwise damaged.



- An impact to a vehicle door in an accident is not adequate to cause the airbag to deploy.



- The surface of the seat with a side airbag is scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Decorative (liner) parts at A-pillar with built-in curtain airbags, roof beam and C-pillar are scratched, cracked, or damaged similarly.
- Airbags need to be removed, disassembled, installed or repaired.

Child Restraint System

Child Restraint Systems

- Choose a suitable child restraint system for your child's age and stature. A child who cannot use a protection device for size reason must sit in the rear seat and have the seat belt fastened properly.
- Please correctly fix the child restraint system not used to a seat. Do not place it on a passenger seat or in the trunk arbitrarily.

WARNING

- Be sure to use a seat belt or child restraint system for a child based on his/her age and size, so as to effectively protect the child in an accident or emergency

WARNING

stop. Holding a child in arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child may be crushed against the windshield or between you and the cabin.

- Vehicles with side curtain airbags: Even though a child is in the child restraint system, do not allow his/her head or any other body part against any door, seat, front/rear pillar or roof side beam (which will be affected when side curtain airbags deploy). Otherwise, the considerable impact force generated when the curtain airbags deploy will cause serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Please follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer to make sure the child restraint it is properly installed in the vehicle. Otherwise, emergency parking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Children are not allowed to stand in the car or kneel on the seat when the car is moving to prevent serious injury or death in emergency braking or collision.
- BYD strongly suggests you to install child restraint systems. Researches indicate that it is safer to install child restraints on the rear seats than the front seats.

Important considerations for selecting a child restraint

- The type and size is suitable for the child.
- The type and size is suitable for the seating position.
- The child restraint must meet the ECE R129 standard.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint manufacturer. Secure the child restraints to the rear seats. Both the second- and the third-row seats are equipped with International Standards Organization Fix (ISOFIX) anchors for child restraints. Make sure to fasten the top tether when installing a child restraint.

- A special anchorage is provided on the second-row outboard seat (the label showing the anchorage is attached to the seat). The seat is equipped with tether strap anchorages on the back.



- A special anchorage is provided on the third-row left outboard seat (the label showing the anchorage is attached to the seat). The seat is equipped with tether strap anchorages on the back.



Installing Child Restraint Systems with ISOFIX Anchorages

1. Check the anchorages positions on the seats. When installing the child restraint, it is recommended to adjust the seatbacks to the rearmost position. After installation, adjust again to restore the seatback to a suitable position.

- Second-row seats:



- Third-row seats:



REMINDER

- The anchorages are located in the gap between the seat cushion and the seatback.
- The third-row anchorages are installed inside the ISOFIX cargo cover at the bottom of the seatback. When you need to use the anchorages, lift up the ISOFIX cargo cover and use its supports inside to secure.

REMINDER

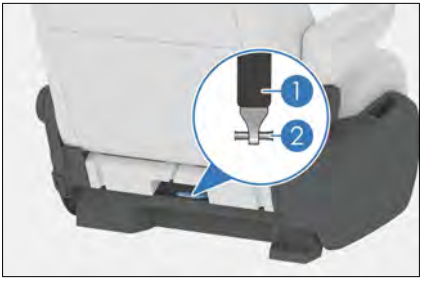
- When installing the child restraint on the third-row seat, insert the seat belt latch into the cushion slot.

2. Lift the head support, fasten the snap hook of the top tether strap to the anchor support, and tighten the top tether to ensure the strap is secure. Extension straps may be required to connect the top tether to the anchor support, if the top tether length is insufficient.

- Second-row seat installation position:

① Top tether

② Anchor support



- Third-row seat installation position:

① Top tether

② Snap hook

③ Anchor support



3. Adjust the head support to a proper position.

- If the driver's seat obstructs the correct installation of the child restraint, install it on the seat behind the front passenger.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint on the seat protected by a front airbag (in the active state), otherwise in the event of an accident, the force of rapid deployment of the front passenger airbag will result in death or serious injury to the child.



WARNING

- Push/Pull the child restraint in different directions to ensure it is securely installed.
- When using the lower anchoring device, make sure that no foreign objects are around the anchoring point and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint; make sure that the child restraint is securely fixed. Otherwise, emergency braking or an accident may result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.
- Do not install a child restraint on the front passenger seat.
- Do not allow children to play with seat belts, otherwise, this could result in serious or even fatal injury to the child.

WARNING

- Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses, or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

REMINDER

- When installing a child restraint on the second-row seats, adjust the second-row seats to their rearmost position to provide better installation space and protection performance.
- When installing a child restraint, if the seat in front interferes with the installation, adjust the position of the front seat to ensure smooth installation.
- When installing a child restraint, remove the head support if it affects the fit of the backrest of the child restraint.
- When a child restraint is not equipped with the backrest, never remove the head support of the vehicle and be sure to adjust it to the locking position.

Seat belt, ISOFIX or I-SIZE CRS installing options in the vehicle

① Driver seat

② Front passenger seat

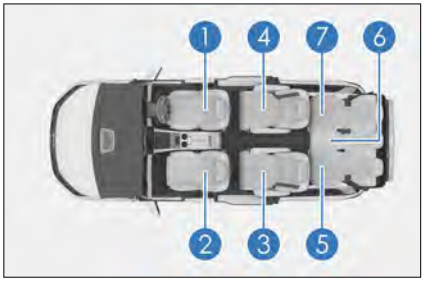
③ Second-row left

④ Second-row right

⑤ Third-row left

⑥ Third-row middle

⑦ Third-row right



Type	Seating Position							
	1	2		3 [b]	4 [b]	5 [b]	6 [b]	7 [b]
		Front Passenger Airbag Activated [a]	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a]					
Seating position suitable for universal belt (Yes/No)	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward-facing fixture	No	No	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3	R1/R2X/R2/R3	R1/R2X/R2/R3	No	No

Type	Seating Position							
	1	2		3 [b]	4 [b]	5 [b]	6 [b]	7 [b]
		Front Passenger Airbag Activated [a]	Front Passenger Airbag Deactivated [a]					
(R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)								
Largest suitable forward-facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	No	No	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	F2X/F2/F3	No	No
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	No	No	B2/B3	B2/B3	B2/B3	No	No

[a] If necessary, adjust the seat height and seatback angle of the front passenger seat to securely install the child restraint system.

[b] If necessary, adjust the height of the rear seat head support or remove it to avoid interference with the child restraint system. Do not remove the head support when using a booster cushion without a backrest. The front seats can be adjusted to ensure the child is not in contact with them.

No: seat position not suitable for installing a child restraint for this group.

- Recommended child restraint systems:

Child Stature (cm)	Manufacturer	Child Restraint System	Installing method
40-83	Maxi-Cosi	Moda	ISOFIX and belted
76-105	Britax safe	Graphene	ISOFIX and belted
100-150	Britax safe	Hi-Liner SG	Belted

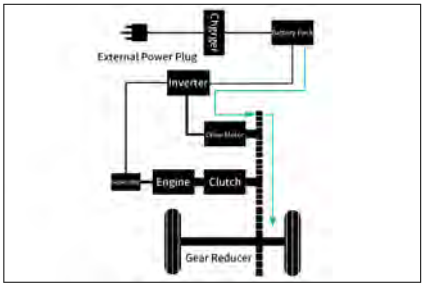
Child Stature (cm)	Manufacturer	Child Restraint System	Installing method
137-150	Britax safe	KidGuard	Belted

Dual-Mode System Working Mode

Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode

EV-Pure Electric Mode

- In EV mode, the high-voltage battery provides electricity to the motor to drive the vehicle in a variety of working conditions, such as starting, reversing, idling, accelerating, and driving at a constant speed.

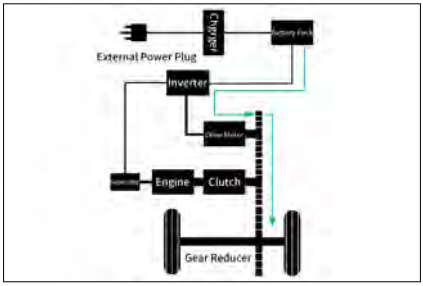


REMINDER

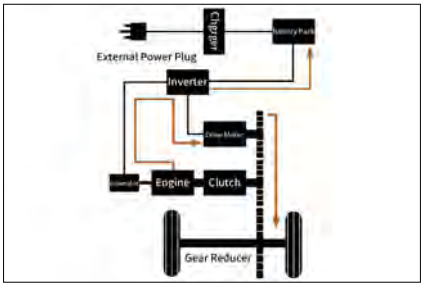
- The vehicle may switch to HEV mode automatically under operating conditions such as rapid acceleration, high vehicle speed, grade climbing, too high or too low temperature, or low SOC level. Switch to EV mode manually if needed when EV conditions are met. It is suggested to use HEV mode when high-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low.

HEV-Dual-Mode

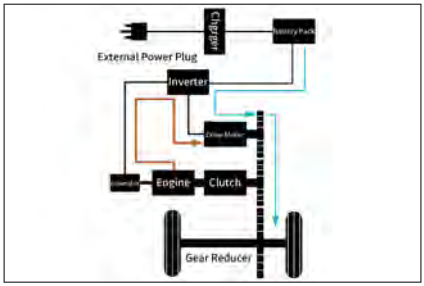
- In HEV mode, when high SOC or low power is required, the engine does not start and the vehicle prioritizes EV mode.



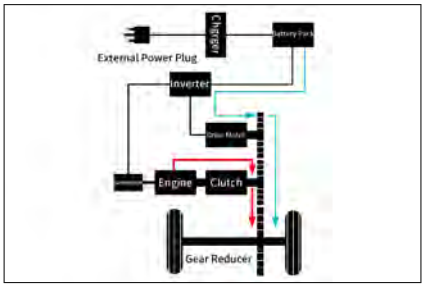
- In HEV mode, when low SOC or high power is required, the engine starts and operates in series for better dynamic.
  - In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity and the battery discharges to drive the motor.



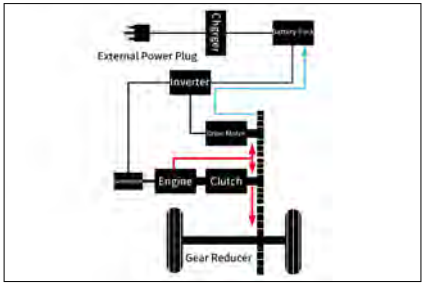
- In HEV mode, the engine generates electricity and the battery discharges to make the drive motor drives.



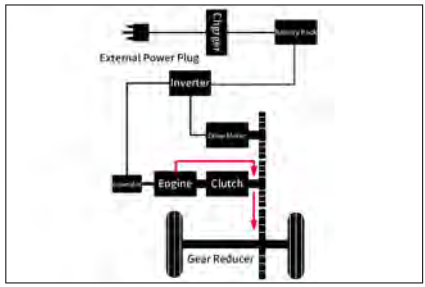
- In HEV mode, when the vehicle is traveling at medium or high speeds, the engine starts to operate in parallel under some working conditions to improve fuel economy:
  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.



  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor generates electricity for energy recycling.



  - In HEV mode, the engine drives the vehicle and the motor rests.



Selecting Working Mode of Dual-Mode System

① Mode

② "EV/HEV" button



EV-Economic mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "ECO" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to minimize power consumption.

EV-Comfort mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "COMFORT"

indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in COMFORT mode to balance comfort and power consumption.

EV-Sport mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the EV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in EV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the SPORT indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to ensure better dynamic performance.

HEV-Economic mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "ECO" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in ECO mode to provide the best fuel economy.

HEV-Comfort mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "COMFORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in COMFORT mode to balance comfort and fuel consumption.

HEV-Sport mode

- Press the "EV/HEV" button, and the HEV indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in HEV mode. Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the "SPORT" indicator on the instrument cluster lights up, indicating that the vehicle is in SPORT mode to provide the best dynamics.

Snow mode

- Toggle the "MODE" button continuously until the SNOW indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, indicating that the vehicle is in SNOW mode. This mode is suitable for slippery roads like snow.

Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System

The vehicle operates using both gasoline and electric power. Pay special attention to the following points:

- In low temperature environment, the performance of high-voltage battery will decline. To prevent the high-voltage battery damaged, the following protection mechanisms are set:
  - When the temperature is low, the vehicle limits the charging and discharging power and SOC level.
  - It is recommended to operate the vehicle in environments above -20°C. In case of the above special environment, it is recommended to use the engine to drive the vehicle.
- The optimal operating temperature for battery is 25 °C. When the temperature is too high or too low, output power is limited and the pure electric driving range may be reduced.

Pay attention to high-voltage and high-temperature components

- High-voltage components, including the high-voltage battery, are connected by orange cables.

WARNING

- Do not touch orange cables or high-voltage battery terminals. Electric shock may cause serious injury or even death.
- Read all warning labels carefully.

- The motor, coolant radiator, and some other components may reach high temperatures during driving. These parts are attached with warning labels. Read all warning labels carefully and follow the instructions.

WARNING

- Do not remove or disassemble any high-voltage parts, otherwise serious or even life-threatening injuries may be caused.
- In case of collision, water immersion, or other situations that may cause damage to the high-voltage system, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to avoid electric shock.
- If an electric leakage warning appears, or if a BYD authorized dealer or service provider has diagnosed electric leakage, do not continue using the vehicle.
- Do not touch parts with high voltage, so as to avoid electric shock caused by improper operation which causes serious injuries or even death.

- For the vehicle is driven by gasoline engine and electric motor, engine sound may be heard from the engine compartment.
- When the vehicle powers up or down, the sound of the high voltage component (the sound of contactor engagement or disengagement) may be heard under the auxiliary dashboard, which is not a fault.
- If the "OK" indicator lights up, the vehicle can be driven, even if the gasoline engine has not been started (driven by the motor only).
- Be sure to press the "P" button when parking. When "P" or "N" gear is engaged and the State of Charge (SOC) is lower than a certain level, the engine may start to charge the high-voltage battery. Do not hold the shift lever in N, R, or D for too long, as it may trigger a false gear-stuck warning. Always release the lever after shifting. Before leaving the vehicle, be sure to shift the vehicle into Park and engage EPB, take away the key, and lock all doors.
- If the low-voltage battery fails and is completely exhausted, even the 12V external power supply cannot be used for jump starts, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- Always turn off the powertrain when leaving the vehicle.
- Be sure to press the "P" button when leaving the vehicle. Even when the engine is off (OK Indicator illuminated), the vehicle may move unexpectedly due to motor operation.
- When the "OK" indicator light is on, the vehicle may travel at a low speed when the vehicle is in Reverse or Drive without depressing the brake pedal. Pay attention to avoid accidents.

- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle repair or maintenance.

- If the vehicle cannot be repaired due to accident or other reasons, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- For handling the sealed hybrid low-voltage battery, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

1 -4 Working Mode Precautions of Dual-Mode System - Warning 2

- In the event of an accident, perform the following operations to reduce the risk of high-voltage electric leakage.
  - Move the vehicle to a safe place.
  - Press the brake pedal, shift the vehicle into Park, stop the dual-mode system, and ensure EPB is engaged.
- If the vehicle is severely damaged, there may be a risk of electric shock. To avoid electric shock, do not touch any high-voltage components (such as battery assembly) or cables (in orange) connecting components. Avoid touching exposed wires inside or outside the vehicle.
- If liquid leaks into components, do not touch as it may contain electrolyte from the low-voltage battery. If the fluid contacts the skin or eyes, flush with plenty of water (preferably boric acid solution) and seek medical attention to avoid severe injury.
- If the vehicle catches fire, use a electric fire extinguisher. Using only a small amount of water can be dangerous, so use plenty of water (such as a fire hydrant) or wait for the fire brigade.

WARNING

- For towing, use four-wheel off-ground towing. If wheels touch the ground, the motor may generate electricity, leading to electric leakage.

Anti-theft Alarm System

Anti-theft Alarm System

Arming the system

1. Switch the ignition off.
2. All occupants get off the vehicle.
3. Lock all doors. Lock all doors and the anti-theft alarm system will arm automatically after 8 seconds.

Triggering the alarm

- The system, when armed, will raise an alarm with flashing turn signals in any of the following situations:
  - Any door, trunk lid or hood is unlocked without using the smart key access function.
  - Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.

Disarming the system

- Anti-theft alarm can be stopped by:
  - Unlocking the door or trunk with a valid smart key/phone app.
  - Using the microswitch to unlock the door by carrying a valid smart key.
  - Opening the trunk remotely with a valid smart key.
  - Using a valid NFC key* to unlock the door.

- Pressing the START/STOP button inside the vehicle while carrying a valid smart key.
- Turning on the A/C system with a valid phone App.

WARNING

- Do not modify the anti-theft alarm system by means of alteration or addition, otherwise the system may fail.

Sentry Mode

Sentry Mode

Senty Mode is an auxiliary parking safety monitoring function. When activated, the system detects proximity of personnel within a predefined vehicle perimeter or detects vibrations from impacts, knocks, or physical disturbances to the vehicle body. Upon detection of such events, Sentinel Mode automatically records the incident video to the in-vehicle SD card. Users may view and delete recorded videos via the vehicle’ s infotainment system under the Sentry Mode menu. If you have the BYD App installed, you can also activate Sentry Mode remotely via your phone and receive related notifications.

Activating Sentry Mode

- This can be done on the infotainment touchscreen or from your phone remotely:
  - Infotainment touchscreen activation: On the infotainment touchscreen，you can turn on the function by tapping the Sentry Mode app or using voice commands to open the Sentry Mode screen. Once enabled, it will automatically activate when the vehicle is powered off and locked.
  - Remote activation: You can activate Sentry Mode remotely via the BYD App. On the Vehicle page of the app, tap the Sentry Mode icon to enter the interface and select to activate it.

Activation requirements

- Sentry Mode will only operate if all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle is powered off and locked.
  - A valid memory card with sufficient available storage is installed.
  - The vehicle battery is above the minimum reserve level set in **Sentry Mode → Settings → Reserve Battery**.
- If any of these conditions are not met, Sentry Mode will not function.
- After first activation, you can configure the Sentry Mode schedule under **Sentry Mode → Settings → Activation Cycle**.

Video recording details

- While active, Sentry Mode continuously monitors the vehicle's surroundings and records video. If a potential or actual threat is detected, the system will display a warning on the infotainment touchscreen, send a notification to the phone, and store the event video on the vehicle's memory card.
- Recorded events are categorized by risk level:
  - Low-risk events (orange label): captured from front, rear, left, and right cameras when the vehicle detects a pedestrian approaching within a certain distance.
  - High-risk events (red label): captured from front, rear, left, and right cameras when the vehicle detects

impacts, collisions, or abnormal vibrations.

Settings

- In the Sentry Mode settings, the following options can be configured:
  - Reserve battery: Sentry Mode automatically stops when the battery reaches the specified reserve level.
  - Activation cycle:
    - Always on: Sentry Mode activates automatically each time the vehicle is powered off and locked.
    - Single activation: Sentry Mode activates only for the current power-off and lock cycle.
  - Restore default settings: Selecting this option will prompt a confirmation dialog. Once confirmed, all Sentry Mode settings will return to factory defaults.

WARNING

- The vehicle owner should evaluate whether Sentry Mode is appropriate based on parking location and environment. It must not be used in areas with national security, military, or political sensitivity. Using Sentry Mode in such areas is at the owner's personal risk.
- To protect the legal rights of yourself and others, do not share or distribute Sentry Mode recordings to third parties. Owners must not use recordings to infringe on the rights of third parties, including personal data of individuals outside the vehicle or information regarding other vehicles and facilities such as license plates. Recordings must not be stored, transmitted, published, or shared in violation of national laws, or used for illegal gain. Any legal liability arising from misuse is the owner's responsibility.

CAUTION

- Once Sentry Mode is active, the vehicle's panoramic cameras monitor the surroundings, and event videos are stored only on the vehicle's memory card. Always keep these videos secure.
- For optimal recording, the vehicle's side mirrors will extend. Be mindful of the space around the vehicle to avoid damage. If the vehicle does not have power-folding mirrors, manually extend the mirrors to ensure full coverage.

Data Collection and Processing

Data Collection and Processing

- This section provides you with some important information on how personal data is collected and processed when you use a BYD vehicle.
- For a more detailed overview on data processing, data protection and data subject rights, please refer to the current version of the privacy policy for the vehicle available in the infotainment system (infotainment touchscreen → **Application center**

→ → System → **Legal information** → **Privacy Policy**).

- This vehicle is equipped with an event data recording (EDR) system. EDR mainly records data in the event of a crash or near-crash (for example, airbag deployment or hitting on a roadside obstacle) to help comprehend the vehicle system operation, such as:
  - Vehicle velocity
  - Tire pressure condition
  - Adaptive cruise control (ACC) system status
  - Whether the seat belt is fastened
- The vehicle records EDR data only when there is a crash or when a near-crash event reaches a certain extent. The EDR does not record any data during the normal driving of the vehicle.
  - The data recorded by the EDR system provides an understanding of the state of the vehicle's safety-related systems when an accident occurs, so that relevant parties can analyze the accident.
  - The EDR data needs to be accessed and read by special equipment. BYD will not disclose your personal data to third parties unless this is legally permissible or you have consented to it. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, third-party agencies with professional equipment (such as government agencies) can also read the EDR data if they have access to the vehicle EDR and equipment (for example, they can read the data of SRS control unit to clarify the accident).

Vehicle Data Processing

- Data is collected when the vehicle is used, such as data collected or transmitted by vehicle sensors or control units, which is necessary for the safe functioning of your vehicle.
- In some cases, the data is used to support driving (driver assistance systems) or to enable a specific comfort or infotainment function.
- Personal data that is collected and processed mainly include in-vehicle data, remote-services-related data, and other data, as further specified below.

In-vehicle data

Operation data

- When the vehicle is used, various vehicle status data (e.g., speed, battery level, and braking system) or environment (e.g., distance sensors and temperature) data is collected and processed.
- This data is not usually stored, but there are control units, sensors or other components installed in the vehicle that record such data, for example, to record maintenance requirements, error messages, or other information.
- The in-vehicle data will only be stored in the equipment in the vehicle but can be read out via the legally required on-doard diagnostics interface, for example, by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider or other third parties.
- In case this access takes place during vehicle maintenance, the information can also be transmitted to BYD engineers for quality assurance, product defect reports, or customer claim verification.

Remote-services-related data

Remote monitoring services

- The vehicle has remote monitoring services. These include remote diagnosis and over-the-air (OTA) updates and upgrades for security and safety purposes (subject to owner's approval).
- These monitoring services serve the following purposes: service provision (remote support/diagnostics), product development, and security/public safety.
- Depending on the country and setup, various vehicle information can be transmitted to BYD's data center in corresponding market for the above purposes, including vehicle location information, vehicle status, such as energy consumption, vehicle speed, gear position, power mode, ESC status, steering system status, battery status, powertrain status, and overall vehicle performance status.

Other

Infotainment system

- Depending on vehicle configuration, data can be added to the infotainment system by the users themselves, such as media data for playing video on the infotainment system, address data for use in the navigation system, or data for online services.
- Depending on vehicle configuration, individual settings in and on the vehicle can also be entered.
- Data stored in the vehicle can be deleted at any time.
- BYD has no control over data transferred to third parties (from the use of third party content, in particular as part of online services).

Integration of mobile devices

- Depending on vehicle configurations, mobile devices can be connected and controlled through the vehicle's infotainment system.
- It may be necessary that the device's screen or audio is displayed/played through the infotainment system or transmitted to it.
- Additional data like positioning or vehicle information can be transmitted through applications for use in certain navigation systems, communication, or other third-party services.
- The specific type of data processing depends on the respective function and is controlled by the user or third parties such as the provider of the devices or corresponding services.

Internet access and connected services

- Depending on vehicle configurations, the Internet can be accessed for certain functions or BYD services through the vehicle's infotainment system network devices.
- BYD is not liable for any such services provided by any other party.
- In such cases, please obtain information about the use of data from the provider of the respective online service.

Camera image recording/surrounding area monitoring

- Your vehicle is equipped with a number of cameras/sensors.
- This is because some vehicle functionalities require the vehicle's path to be detected and assessed, which is done by cameras detecting objects in the vehicle's surroundings such as obstacles.
- The images are transmitted to the respective control module for further

analytics required to operate the systems.

- Some images are just processed on the random access memory, and others may be stored, depending on vehicle equipment.
- The vehicle may be equipped with an outward-facing camera that can be used to take footage of the surrounding (for example, dashcam).
- The vehicle may also be equipped with an inward-facing camera, which can be used to take footage inside the vehicle.
- Both OFC and IFC footage will be stored.
- You are responsible to check the laws of your residence before turning on your outward-facing camera (OFC) or inward-facing camera (IFC) (for instance, in some countries, consent is required for the use of IFC, and in others, OFC is strictly restricted to dashcam purposes).
- For more camera details, see Panoramic View System.

Permanent Vehicle Transfer to Third Parties and Offline Mode

- In case of a permanent vehicle transfer, that is, when you sell or give a vehicle to a new owner for permanent use, it must be noted that any personalization/user settings made via the infotainment system (including the address list and the navigation system) can be accessed by the new owner.

REMINDER

- To protect your privacy, it is recommended to factory reset the vehicle before it is scrapped for disposal or transferred.
- You can also restrict your vehicle's communication with the BYD data server and the processing of vehicle-related and personal data by setting the vehicle to offline mode.
- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Wi-Fi icon to turn it off.
- Alternatively, tap infotainment touchscreen → **Application center** → → **Network & internet** → **Wi-Fi**→ Off.

Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities

- BYD discloses your personal data to third parties only if this is legally permissible or you have consented to it.
- However, subject to applicable laws, government agencies may be authorized to read out data from vehicles (e.g. data can be read from the airbag control unit to clarify an accident).
- If required by law, BYD may also be obliged to disclose data upon request to governmental authorities in your country, e.g. in the investigation of a criminal offence.

Your Data Protection Rights

- BYD has staunch respect for its customer's privacy, and strictly complies with all data protection laws, in particular the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR) and applicable local laws.
- According to these laws, owners have specific rights when their personal data is processed:
  - Data subjects have the right of information and access, to rectification, erasure of personal data

("right to be forgotten") and the right to object to the processing of personal data or to restrict it (or to withdraw consent given earlier, as well as the right to data portability).

- These rights may be limited in some cases. For example, if we can show that we have a legal obligation to process your data, or if providing the information to you would disclose personal data about another person, or if we are legally prevented from disclosing that information.
- In some cases, this may mean that we can retain the data even if you withdraw your consent.

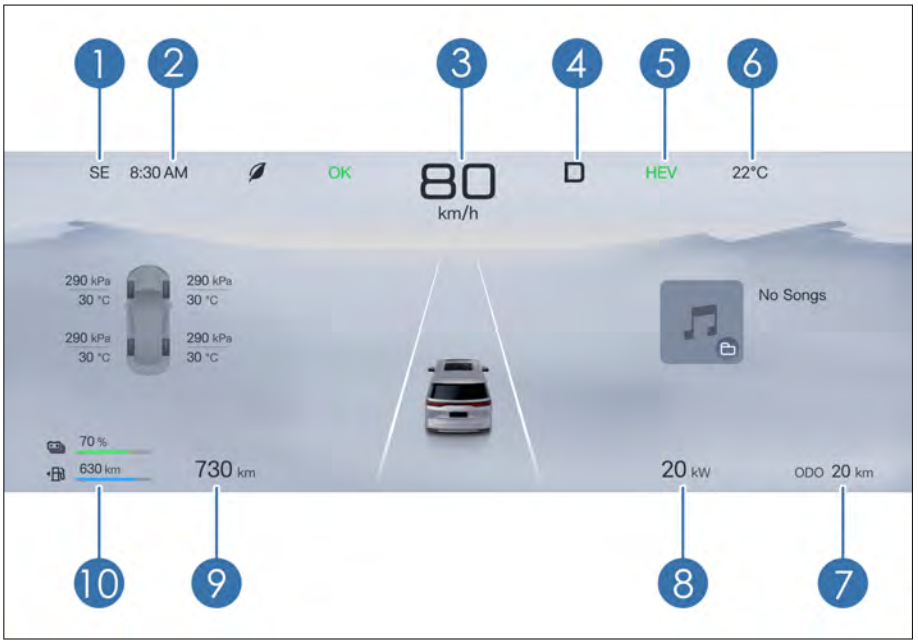
02 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER

Instrument Cluster.....40

Instrument Cluster

Instrument Cluster View

LCD Instrument Cluster

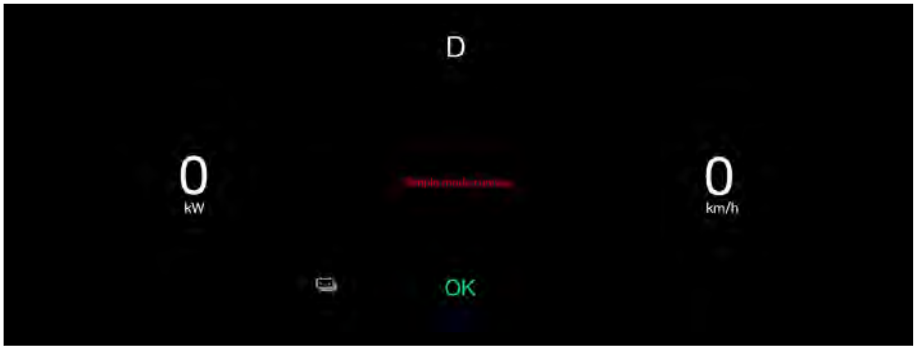


1	Direction	6	Outside temperature
2	Time	7	Total mileage odometer
3	Speedometer	8	Power meter
4	Gear status	9	Total Remaining driving range
5	EV/HEV mode	10	Fuel gauge/State of charge (SOC)

Instrument cluster Settings

- The user can enter the instrument settings by clicking on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Audio&Display**→ **Instrument**. From there, they can adjust the instrument brightness, mileage information, and battery gauge display, among other settings.
- Mileage information can be switched between total mileage, mileage one, mileage two, HEV mileage, and EV mileage.
- The SOC can be set to be displayed as mileage or battery level.

Simplified mode*



REMINDER

- For safe driving, the instrument cluster may switch to simple mode during occasional communication delays in the instrument cluster system. In this mode, the instrument cluster continues to display driving-related information normally without affecting normal vehicle travel. After the system becomes normal, the instrument cluster may automatically exit the simple mode. If it does not, try the following actions to switch back to normal mode:
  - Press and hold the scroll button on auxiliary dashboard for three seconds to restart the instrument cluster information display system.
  - While vehicle safety is ensured, operate the vehicle power switch to turn off the vehicle and then turn the ignition on.
- If the instrument cluster remains in simple mode after those actions have been taken, promptly contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.
- The image of the instrument cluster view is for reference only and is subject to actual factory configuration.

Instrument Cluster Indicators

Indicators/Warning Lights

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Turn signal indicator		Position indicator

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Discharge indicator		OK indicator
	HDC indicator		Low beam indicator
	AVH working indicator		GPF regeneration indicator*
	EV indicator		HEV indicator
	High beam indicator		AFL indicator
	ACC status indicator		ICC status indicator
	Sport mode indicator		Economy mode indicator
	Normal mode indicator		Snow mode indicator
	GPF regeneration fault warning light*		Driving power limit warning light
	Low fuel level indicator		Tire pressure fault warning light
	Oil life monitoring*		Smart key warning light
	Main alarm indicator		ESC OFF indicator
	Electronic stability control fault warning light		Rear fog light indicator
	Emission warning		ABS fault warning light

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	Headlight fault warning light		AVAS OFF indicator
	Lane support system fault warning light		AEB fault indicator
	BSD fault warning light		Driver monitoring system warning
	ELKA urgent avoidance fault indicator		ELKA off indicator
	TSR off		TSR fault warning light
	LSS off indicator		ICC fault warning light
	AFL fault warning light		Function safety failure indicator
	EPB indicator		Parking brake system fault warning light
	Seat belt reminder indicator		Airbag fault warning light
	Steering system fault warning light		Coolant overheating warning light
	Low oil pressure warning light		High-voltage battery charging connection indicator
	Low-voltage power system fault warning light		Headlight fault warning light
	Motor overheating warning light		High-voltage battery overheating warning light
	High-voltage battery fault warning light		Powertrain fault warning light

Indicator	Name	Indicator	Name
	AEB warning light		TSR indicator
	Thermal runaway warning light		EV function limited Warning

Warning Lights/Indicators Description

 Emission fault warning light

- With the vehicle powered ON, this indicator is on for self-check. If on at any other time, it indicates that a certain control system of the vehicle may be faulty. Even though you may not be aware of any vehicle performance abnormalities, continuous operation in this state may cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- If this warning light lights up when the vehicle is not in self-check, drive the vehicle to the roadside safely, power the vehicle off, and power it on again, Start the engine and check this warning light. If this warning light is still on, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible. Before the BYD authorized dealer or service provider finds out the fault, be careful to drive the vehicle and avoid driving at a high speed or fully pressing the accelerator pedal.
- If the warning light lights up frequently, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection, even if it goes out after the above steps are followed.

CAUTION

- Continuous driving after the emission fault warning light turns on may damage the emission control system and the engine.

 Low fuel warning light

- This indicator is on the fuel gauge. If on, it indicates little fuel in the fuel tank and reminds the driver to refuel the vehicle as soon as possible. When the fuel tank shakes on a slope or curve, the low fuel warning light may be on earlier than usual.

 Smart key warning light

- If the key is not in the vehicle when the START/STOP button is pressed, the warning light will light up for a few seconds, a beep will be heard, and a "Key not detected" message will be displayed.
- If you carry the electronic smart key and press the START/STOP button, this warning light will not light up and the vehicle can be powered on.
- This warning light will disappear if the key is taken into the vehicle within a few seconds after the light turns on.
- If the warning light flashes when the START/STOP button is pressed, it indicates low battery of the key.

 ABS fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If the anti-lock braking system (ABS) is working properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. Thereafter, if the system fails, the light lights up again until the fault is cleared.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), the braking system continues to operate whereas the ABS does not.
- When the ABS fault warning light is on (with the parking system fault warning light off), since the anti-lock braking system does not operate, the wheels will be locked in case of emergency braking or braking on a slippery road.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light does not come on or is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

WARNING

- If the ABS fault warning light is still on while the parking brake system fault warning light is on, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.

- The ABS has a self-check function. If any malfunction occurs, the ABS fault warning light turns on. This means the ABS fails. but the brake can still function as that of an ordinary non-ABS vehicle. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If both the ABS and parking system warning lights go on after the electronic parking brake is fully released, it indicates that the braking force distribution system of the front and rear tires has also failed.
- If the brake pedal feels abnormal, take measures immediately. The braking system is dual-circuited, so partial failure cannot prevent the other two wheels from braking. In such a situation, you need to press the brake pedal further to slow the vehicle, and braking distance is longer. Decelerate the vehicle and safely move it to the roadside. A longer braking distance can present serious driving hazards, so the vehicle must be towed away for immediate repair.
- If you have to drive a short distance under such conditions, proceed at low speed with extreme caution.



Tire pressure fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. It turns off in a few seconds if the tire pressure monitoring system is working properly. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again.
- When the tire pressure fault warning light comes on or flashes, the message "Please check the TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster, and the tire pressure is displayed as "---", it indicates that the tire pressure system is faulty.
- When the tire pressure value displays "No Signal", it indicates that the tire pressure signal at this location of the vehicle may be disturbed or the

tire pressure monitoring module is damaged.

- When the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on and one or more values turn yellow on the tire pressure screen on the instrument cluster, the corresponding tire is in under-pressure condition. When the temperature value of one or more tires turns yellow, it indicates that the tire temperature is too high.
- In the event of any of the situations above, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.



Electronic stability control fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is on. If Electronic Stability Controller (ESC) functions properly, the light goes out in a few seconds. If the system fails, this warning light turns on again until the system fault is cleared.
- If the ESC warning light flashes temporarily while the vehicle is in motion, it indicates the ESC system is working.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC fails, but the ABS and the braking system continue to operate normally.
- When the ESC warning light turns on (with the ABS fault warning light and the parking system fault warning light off), the ESC system does not work. This means the vehicle is extremely unstable at sharp turns or when the driver steers away from obstacles ahead.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off (self-check not performed within 5s) or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light is steady on while driving.

WARNING

- If the ESC fault warning light remains on while the fault warning lights for the ABS and the parking system are on, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. This is because braking at this time can render the vehicle extremely unstable, and the anti-lock braking system does not work at all.



Electronic stability control off warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on for a few seconds and then disappears.
- When the "ESC OFF" switch is turned on, the light should remain steady on and the ESC system will not operate. When the ESC OFF switch is pressed again, this warning light should turn off and the ESC system returns to normal.

WARNING

- While the electronic stability control off warning light is on, the driver must stay alert and

WARNING

keep driving at a lower speed when making a sharp turn and when avoiding an obstacle which appears suddenly, because braking at this time can render the vehicle unstable, as the ESC system is switched OFF.



Driving power limit warning light

- When the motor power is limited, this warning light will light up, and it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.



Seat belt reminder indicator

- This warning light reminds the driver and the passenger to fasten their seat belts. With the ignition on, if either the driver or the passengers doesn't fasten a seat belt, the corresponding seat belt indicator will light up. It remains on until the seat belt is fastened.



Airbag fault warning light

- With the ignition on, this warning light turns on and then off after a few seconds if the airbag system is working properly. This warning light is used to monitor the airbag ECU, collision sensors, inflation device, warning lights, connections, and power supply.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - When the ignition is switched on, this warning light remains off or is solid on after the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on or flashes during driving.



Parking system fault warning light

- When the brake fluid level is low and the braking system is faulty, this warning light lights up. If any of the following conditions occurs, immediately park the vehicle in a safe place. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on and the brake fluid level is low.
  - This warning light is solid on although after starting the vehicle, the brake fluid level and EPB system operation are normal (the EPB is engaged and released normally, and the message "Please check the EPB" is not displayed). Brief flashing is considered normal.
  - The parking brake system fault warning light stays on with the ABS fault warning light. In this case, the braking system or the EPB may not work normally, lengthening the braking distance. Therefore, during braking, the ABS does not function, and the vehicle is unstable. Proceed with caution.

WARNING

- When the brake fluid level is low, park the vehicle.



Steering system fault warning light

- When the steering system is faulty, this warning light is steady on. It is recommended to bring the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- The steering system features an electric motor to reduce the force required to turn the steering wheel.
- When turning the steering wheel, a hum may be heard from the running motor. This does not indicate that the motor is faulty.
- Do not turn the steering wheel to its limit position for more than five seconds, otherwise the activation of temperature protection will result in heavy steering or damage the steering system.

- If you have turned the steering wheel frequently with the vehicle staying put for a long time, the steering wheel may become difficult to turn even if the warning light does not turn on. This is not a fault.
  - To prevent steering system overheating, the power assist effect will be reduced if the steering wheel has been frequently turned with the vehicle staying put for a long time. As a result, the steering wheel become difficult to turn. In this case, reduce steering frequency, or power off the vehicle and turn off the engine. The system will recover within 10 minutes.

WARNING

- If the steering system warning light goes on, immediately park the vehicle safely, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



Coolant overheating indicator

- With the ignition on, this light indicates that the coolant temperature is high. It is recommended to park the vehicle to cool it down. In harsh conditions, like hot season and long periods of hill climbing and high speed driving, the engine may overheat.



Low oil pressure warning light

- This light is about warning of low oil pressure. If this warning light flashes or remains on during driving, drive off the road, park the vehicle in a safe place, and shut down the engine immediately. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for help.
- When the engine is idling, this warning light may flash occasionally, or go on momentarily after emergency braking. When the engine is accelerating gradually, if this indicator goes out, the oil pressure is normal.
- This warning light goes on in case of very low oil level.

CAUTION

- Do not drive the vehicle when the warning light is on, even for a short distance. Otherwise, the engine is damaged.



Low-voltage power system fault warning light

- If this warning light turns on while driving, it indicates that there is a

problem with the charging system, DC system, or low-voltage power supply system. The engine can continue igniting until the battery runs out. In this case, turn off the A/C, fan, and the infotainment touchscreen, and drive the vehicle to the nearest BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance as soon as possible.

 Powertrain fault warning light

- If the powertrain fails, this warning light turns on.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is switched on.
  - This warning light turns on during driving.

CAUTION

- Try not to drive the vehicle when the warning light is on. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to check the problem as soon as possible.

 High-voltage battery overheating warning light

- If this warning light is on, it indicates that the high-voltage battery temperature is too high and the vehicle must be stopped to cool down. When the warning light flashes, it is recommended to immediately stop the vehicle safely and leave the vehicle as soon as possible.
- The high-voltage battery may overheat under the following operating conditions:
  - Driving up a slope for a long time in hot weather
  - Long period of stop-and-go traffic condition, frequent rapid acceleration, frequent hard braking, or vehicle running for a long time without pause.

 High-voltage battery fault warning light

- This warning light comes on when the ignition is switched on. If the high-voltage battery system is working properly, this warning light will turn off in a few seconds. If this light lights up again thereafter, it indicates a system failure. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- If any of the following cases occurs, it means there is a fault in components monitored by the warning light system. In that case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle inspection as soon as possible.
  - This warning light is steady on when the ignition is on.
  - This warning light is steady on or occasionally turns on while driving.

 GPF regeneration indicator*

- When the Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) carbon load (particulate matter emission) reaches a certain amount, the GPF will actively regenerate and the GPF indicator is solid green. At this time, try to drive on the highway as much as road conditions allow, and when the particulate matter is

cleared, the GPF indicator turns off automatically.

 GPF regeneration fault indicator*

- When the GPF carbon load (particulate matter emission) reaches its maximum, fuel consumption increases, power performance decreases, and the GPF indicator is solid yellow. At this time, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

REMINDER

- If the vehicle is driven in EV mode for a long time, this function starts the engine for maintenance and a prompt is displayed on the instrument cluster: The engine has been started for maintenance.

Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts

The instrument cluster may display the following fault prompts. Handle them as recommended:

Symbol	Error message	Response
	Please check the OBC system	The on-board charging system is faulty. Check the charging connection, and reconnect the charging equipment. If the fault persists, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Stop using remote driving for your safety.	Stop using remote driving when it is abnormal.
	Please check the data network of the vehicle	The vehicle may be disconnected from the data network. In this case, park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Engine attachment limited	The engine accessories function is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the memory system*	The memory system is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the headlight	The headlight is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
	Please check the gear	The shifter controller is faulty. Park the vehicle immediately, and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Symbol	Error message	Response
	Please check HDC system	The HDC system is faulty. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

03 CONTROLLER OPERATIONS

Doors and Keys.....54
Seats.....74
Steering Wheel.....86
Wipers..... 89
Mirrors.....92
Switches.....94

Doors and Keys

Keys

The vehicle is equipped with keys, including electronic smart key, mechanical key (installed in the electronic smart key), bluetooth digital key* and NFC key*.

Electronic Smart Key

Press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the correct smart key to unlock or lock all doors. When the vehicle is locked, press the microswitch on the rear door handle while carrying the correct smart key to unlock the vehicle and open the corresponding power sliding door. Press smart key buttons to lock/unlock doors, open/close the trunk, or open/close the sliding doors.

① Lock button

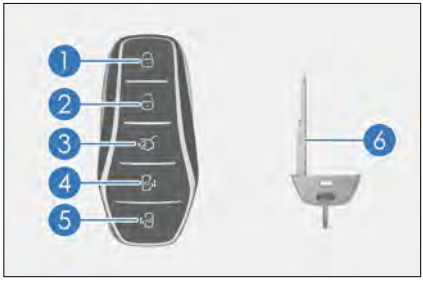
② Unlock button

③ Trunk release button

④ Right sliding door open/close button

⑤ Left sliding door open/close button

⑥ Mechanical key



WARNING

Button battery safety alert:

- The button (coin) battery in the smart key is hazardous, both new and used batteries are to be kept away from children at all times.
- If swallowed or placed inside any part of the body, a lithium button battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in two hours or less.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

CAUTION

- The smart key is an electronic component. Observe the following instructions to prevent damage to the key:
  - Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not disassemble the smart key.
  - Do not let the smart key hit other objects or fall down.
  - Do not immerse the key in water or clean it in the ultrasonic scrubber.
  - Do not place smart keys with devices that emit electromagnetic waves, such as the mobile phone.
  - Do not attach to the smart key any objects (such as a metal seal) capable of cutting off electromagnetic wave signals.

CAUTION

- You can register a spare key for the same vehicle. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

- If the electronic smart key cannot operate the door within the normal distance, or the key indicator light is dim or off:
  - Check for nearby radio stations or airport radio transmitters that interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
  - The smart key battery may be exhausted. Check the battery inside the electronic smart key. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery change.
- If you lose your smart key, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to reduce the risk of vehicle theft or accidents.
- Do not change the transmission frequency arbitrarily, increase the transmission power (including additional transmission frequency amplifier), or arbitrarily connect the external detection antenna or switch to other transmitting detection antennas.
- The use of the smart key must not cause harmful interference to legal radio communication services. Once interference is found, stop using the key immediately and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use.
- The use of micropower radio equipment must endure the interference of various radio services or the radiation interference of industrial, scientific, and medical equipment.
- Do not use it near aircraft or airports.
- People implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators should stay away from the detection antennas of intelligent entry and start systems, as electromagnetic waves can affect the normal use of such devices.
- In addition to people implanted with pacemakers or defibrillators, those who use other electronic medical devices should also consult the manufacturer on the use of such devices under the influence of electromagnetic waves. Electromagnetic waves may bring unknown consequences to the use of such medical devices.
- When leaving the vehicle, always carry your key and lock the vehicle. Never leave anyone (especially children) alone in the vehicle.

Mechanical Key

Use the mechanical key (inside the smart key) to lock or unlock the driver's door. Insert the mechanical key back into the smart key when it is not in use.

Taking out the mechanical key

- Press the "PUSH" button ② on the smart key, and take out the mechanical key in the direction indicated by ①.



Reinstalling the mechanical key

- Press the "PUSH" button and insert the mechanical key back into the smart key when it is not in use.

Bluetooth Digital Key*

- You can use the BYD Bluetooth digital key to control the vehicle through a close-range mobile phone Bluetooth connection, including locking or unlocking the doors.
- You can download and install the latest BYD App in the app market. The function of Bluetooth digital key can be found in the app.
- For vehicles supporting Bluetooth digital key, you can use the key after activating it in the BYD App.
- Turn on the Bluetooth on your phone, approach the vehicle, and open the BYD App for automatic Bluetooth digital key connection. You can also connect it manually. The key is effective after Bluetooth is connected.
- The specific functions supported by the key are subject to the vehicle configuration. The key can be used without network. After the key connection, you can select operations, and the app will immediately send commands to control the vehicle.
- In some countries or regions, according to relevant regulations, when a user starts the vehicle, the vehicle will detect the position of the Bluetooth digital key. The vehicle can be started only when it detects that the key is within two meters of it to ensure the vehicle property safety.

CAUTION

- Before activating the Bluetooth digital key, ensure that the vehicle network is well connected. If the activation fails, try to move the vehicle to a place with good network and activate the key again in the application.
- After the vehicle is unlocked with a Bluetooth digital key, the doors will lock automatically if there is no operation in a short time.
- When the Bluetooth key connection or operation fails for many times, you can turn the Bluetooth off and then on, or restart the application.
- Limited by the vehicle environment and mobile phone performance, the effective distance of the key will be reduced in case of dense vehicles.
- There are a few mobile phones that are not compatible with Bluetooth digital keys.

NFC Key Card*

- The NFC key card, based on the near field communication method, can be used to unlock/lock the vehicle and authorize vehicle start.
- Hold the NFC card close to the NFC sign on the driver's side mirror to unlock/lock the vehicle and obtain vehicle start permission.

⚠ CAUTION

- NFC key card is an electronic product. The following instructions must be observed to prevent function failure of or damage to the card:
  - Do not place the NFC card in the wireless phone charger area in the vehicle (see ***P218***).
  - Do not attach any object (such as a metal seal or metal phone case) that can block electromagnetic waves, when using the NFC card.
  - Do not place the NFC card in a position exposed to high temperature, such as on the dashboard.
  - Do not bend the NFC card.
  - Do not put the NFC card together with hard objects.
- NFC key cards use near-field communication technology, requiring a detection distance of less than 2 cm. Hold your NFC card close to the side mirror for 1–2 seconds.
- It is recommended to carry the NFC card at all times to avoid situations where you may be unable to use the vehicle due to loss or malfunction of your phone or smart key.
- In order to ensure vehicle safety, handle the NFC key card with care. If it is lost, immediately contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for blocking of the lost card and configuration of a new card.

NFC Digital Key*

- The NFC digital key* is a digital key solution provided by BYD. You can register smartphones or wearable devices as vehicle keys to unlock, lock, and start the vehicle.
- Before activating the NFC digital key, ensure that:
  - You have registered BYD Cloud Service for the vehicle.
  - Your vehicle supports NFC digital key.
  - Some mobile phones and wearable devices support BYD NFC digital keys (consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for other supported wearable devices).

Activating the NFC digital key on smartphones

Before activating, start the vehicle and shift into Park with a valid smart key. Follow the instructions bellow to activate:

- Via the BYD app:
  - Download and log into the BYD app. Navigate to "Digital Key" and follow the instructions to activate the key.

Activating the NFC digital key on wearable devices

Supported wearable devices include Apple Watch (consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for other supported devices), and there are two ways of activation:

- Synchronize the key from iPhone to Apple Watch:
  - After successful key activation on iPhone, the device prompts to add the NFC digital key to a paired Apple Watch which is nearby and unlocked. Follow the prompts to complete activation.
- Via the Watch app:

- If the iPhone NFC key is active but not synced to Apple Watch,
- open the Watch app on iPhone, select "Wallet", find the key, and tap "Add" to activate the key following the instructions.

Using the NFC digital key

Ensure NFC is enabled on your device before using the NFC digital key. Then follow the instructions below:

- To unlock/lock the vehicle and authorize the NFC digital key with start permission, position the NFC antenna area of the smartphone or wearable device near the NFC sign on the driver side mirror. Consult the manufacturer for the NFC antenna area of your device.

CAUTION

- After authorizing with the NFC digital key, start the vehicle promptly, or you need to place the device at the NFC sign again to reauthorize.

Removing the NFC digital key

You can remove the NFC digital key in two ways:

- Via the BYD app:
  - Open the BYD App and navigate to the digital key management screen, select the key to remove, and enter the password to remove it.
- Via the Wallet app:
  - Open the Wallet app on the phone, select the digital key, and remove it following the instructions.

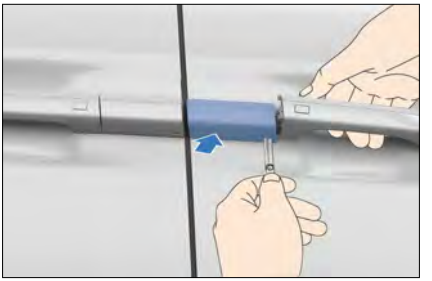
CAUTION

- Some smartphone and wearable device models do not support NFC digital keys.

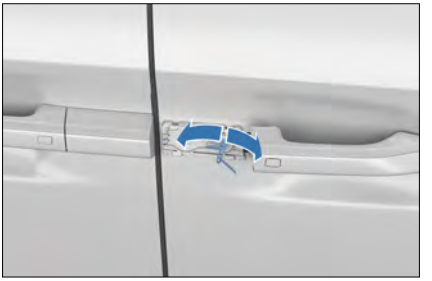
Locking/Unlocking

Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key

1. Pull the driver's door handle, insert the mechanical key into the grooves respectively as shown, and pry the snap upward with a little force to open the lock hole cover.



2. Release the handle, insert the key into the key hole on the driver's door handle, turn and remove the key, and pull the door handle to open the door.
   - Unlocking doors: Turn the key counterclockwise.
   - Locking doors: Turn the key clockwise.



Opening with Door Control Button

- The front door is equipped with a door control button.
- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the button once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the button twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



Opening with Interior Door Handle

- The door handles are located inside the front door bins.
  - When the vehicle is unlocked, pull the handle once to open the door from inside the vehicle.
  - When the vehicle is locked, pull the handle twice to open the door from inside the vehicle.



WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with door switches or handles inside the vehicle, as this could accidentally open the doors during driving, posing a risk of injury.

CAUTION

- Using mechanical connections, the interior door handles remain can open the doors even when the vehicle is powered off.

Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key

- The wireless remote control is used to unlock or lock all doors at a close distance, and complete additional functions.
- In the active area, press the associated button on the registered smart key to lock or unlock all doors.

Locking:

- When all the doors, the hood, and the trunk are closed, press the lock button to lock all the doors. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors fold in (when side mirror auto fold is enabled on the infotainment system) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once. Check whether all doors are securely locked.



- If a door, the hood or the trunk is not closed, the turn signals will not flash, and the horn will sound once.

Unlocking:

- Press the unlock button. All doors are unlocked, and the turn signal flashes twice.
- When you unlock all the doors with the smart key, even if no door is opened, the interior lights (auto interior lights are enabled) will stay on for 15 seconds and then go out.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open any door within 30 seconds after unlocking with the smart key. Otherwise, all the doors will lock automatically.
- If the key is in the vehicle when the doors are closed and locked, the vehicle will unlock automatically and the turn signals will flash twice.

Finding the Vehicle with Smart Key

- When the vehicle is in anti-theft mode, press the lock button. The vehicle sounds a long beep and turn signals flash 15 times. Use this function to locate the vehicle when it cannot be found.
- When the vehicle is in car search mode, press the lock button again. The vehicle enters the next car search mode.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key

- When the ignition is switched off:
  - Press and hold the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.
  - Press and hold the unlock button on the smart key to lower the four windows.
- To enable or disable key unlock/lock/closing window functions, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows**. (Configurations of the actual vehicle prevail.)

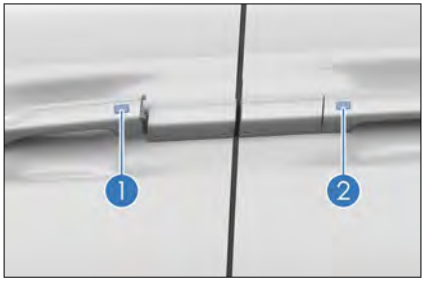
⚠ CAUTION

- When using the remote control function to raise windows, pay attention to the safety of occupants in the vehicle, and use this function only after making sure the windows are clear from pinching anyone.

Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch

Locking

- With the doors closed but not locked, press the microswitch on the front door handle while carrying the smart key. All the doors are locked. If the vehicle is shut down, the side mirrors will fold (Auto-Fold is enabled in infotainment touchscreen) with turn signals flashing once. If the ignition has not been switched off, the side mirrors will not fold, the turn signals will not flash, and the alarm will sound once.



- If a door, the hood or the trunk lid is not closed, pressing the microswitch will still lock the closed doors, but the horn will only sound once, and the turn signals will not flash.

Unlocking

- When doors are locked, press the microswitch ① on the front door handle while carrying the smart key into the activated area. All doors unlock and turn signals flash twice.
- When doors are locked, press the microswitch ② on the sliding door handle while carrying the valid smart key. All doors unlock, the sliding door on the corresponding side opens completely, and turn signals flash twice.
- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking, or all doors will relock automatically.
- Pressing the microswitch does not work if:
  - This is performed while a door is being opened or closed.
  - The smart key is left in the vehicle.

REMINDER

- If the smart key is too close to an exterior door handle or window,

REMINDER

it may not be possible to activate the entry function.

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch

- When the ignition is switched off, press and hold the microswitch while carrying the smart key to roll up or down all windows.
- To enable or disable this function, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows**.

Locking/Unlocking with the NFC Key*

Locking:

- When doors are closed but unlocked, hold the effective NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. All doors can then be locked at the same time. If the ignition is off, the turn signals flash once.



Unlocking:

- When doors are locked, hold the NFC key close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror. Then all doors can be unlocked at the same time. The turn signals flash twice.
- Putting the effective NFC key close to designated area on the driver's side mirror does not work if:

- This is performed while the door is opened or closed.

- To use the NFC digital key on the phone, enable the NFC function of the phone and hold the top back part of the phone close to the designated area on the driver's side mirror.

CAUTION

- The NFC digital key may not work on some phones when they are turned off.
- Avoid using the NFC digital key of your phone for extended periods or frequently when it is out of battery or turned off.

REMINDER

- If the anti-theft alarm system is armed, open a door within 30 seconds after the unlocking with a valid NFC key, or all doors will relock automatically.
- After unlocking by NFC key, the user can start the vehicle without the key in a stipulated period, while this will be disabled after valid locking.
- For NFC key (smart phone) setup instructions, see ***P57*** for details.

Locking/Unlocking the Trunk

Opening/Closing the trunk with smart key

Double-click the trunk opening button on the smart key, and the turn signals will flash twice. Press this button again to stop opening. Then double press it to close the trunk.

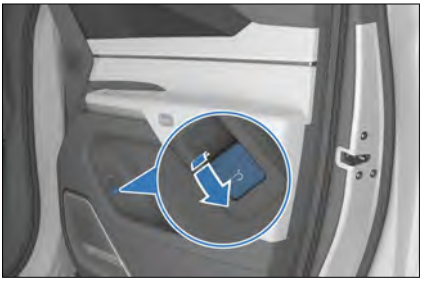


REMINDER

- If the trunk release button is pressed again while the lid is in motion, it will stop at its current position.

Opening/Closing the trunk from inside the vehicle

- When the trunk lid is closed, pull the switch once, and the lid will automatically unlock and open to the set height (maximum height by default).
- While the trunk lid is opening, pull this switch again to freeze it in place.
- With the vehicle powered on and the trunk open, pull this switch for more than one second to automatically close the trunk. Release the switch to freeze the closing motion.



Opening the trunk with exterior switch

- With the vehicle unlocked, press the exterior trunk switch to open the trunk.
- With the vehicle locked, unlock the vehicle with the smart key and press the exterior switch to open the trunk.

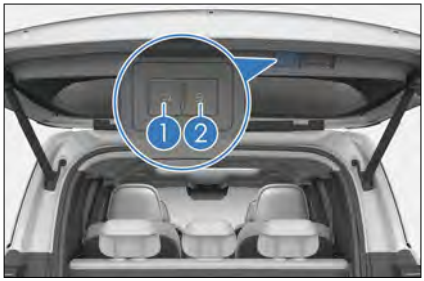


REMINDER

- If the switch is pressed again while the lid is in motion, it will stop at its current position.

① Closing the trunk automatically*

- When the trunk lid is open and stationary, press this button to close the lid.
- Press this button a second time to stop the lid at the current position. Press this button again to have the lid move in the opposite direction.



② Vehicle lock button*

- When the ignition is off and the trunk is open, pressing the lock switch while carrying a valid smart key closes the trunk, locks the entire vehicle, and arms the anti-theft alarm system.

Closing the trunk manually*

- When the vehicle is unlocked, the trunk can be closed manually.

CAUTION

- Before closing the trunk electronically, make sure doors, windows and sunroof are properly closed.

Setting trunk lid opening height*

- Open the trunk manually or automatically to the desired position, keep it at this position, and then press and hold the interior trunk button for over three seconds. The speaker sounds for one second, indicating that the opening height is successfully set to the current position.
- Set the trunk opening height by going to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Locks** → **Doors**.

Anti-pinch function

- The trunk will open or stop moving if it contacts any obstacle while closing or opening.

When the trunk fails to act automatically

- Manually and completely close the trunk for recovery.

When reconnecting the low-voltage battery

- Close the trunk manually to ensure the power trunk lid functions normally.

WARNING

- In order to prevent serious injury, make sure to observe the following precautions:
  - Never try to deliberately activate the anti-pinch function.
  - Make sure to alert people nearby of the lid motion.
  - Make sure hands and fingers are clear from the lid area when it is closing.
  - Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the trunk.
  - Make sure the trunk is properly closed before driving the vehicle.
  - Make sure to remove any ice or snow from the area before opening the trunk, otherwise the lid may close again.
  - Do not manually interfere in lid motion when it is opening or closing.
  - Be mindful of windy conditions when opening or closing the trunk.
  - The anti-pinch function may fail to work if an object is caught right before the trunk is fully closed.
  - The lid may start closing before fully opening. Opening or closing the trunk on slopes is more difficult than on level ground. Be mindful of the possibility of the lid to move on its own in such conditions. Before loading or unloading the trunk, make sure the lid is fully open and secure.

WARNING

- The anti-pinch function may fail depending on the object shape. Be especially careful about hand and fingers.
- Do not allow a child to operate the power trunk lid.

Opening the Trunk by Projection Sensing

1. When the rear door is closed, stand within the rear door sensing area with an active smart key, or unlock the vehicle using the App via NFC or Bluetooth. The vehicle will then automatically detect and project a pattern onto the ground.



2. When the user's foot fully covers the entire projected pattern, projected light will flash.



3. Once the projection light rapidly flashes, remove your foot to allow the rear door to open automatically.

WARNING

- When performing the operation, ensure that there is sufficient space as the door opens. Otherwise, it may cause damage to the doors or injury to the occupants.
- For safety, it is recommended to place the smart key outside the rear door sensing area in the following situations to prevent the rear door from accidentally opening.
  - You are to place or pick up an object at the rear of the vehicle.
  - You are to maintain (e.g. polish) the rear of the vehicle.

CAUTION

- Users should step on the center of the projection pattern, ensuring that at least 95% of the pattern is covered.
- Complete kicking within 1.5-3.5 seconds. Short or prolonged pressure on the pattern with your foot may lead to failed recognition.
- If your foot is not recognized when placed in the projection area or if it remains in the area during the flashing period, please remove your foot, wait a moment, and then place your foot on the projection pattern again, making sure to remove it during the flashing period.
- Placing your foot outside the projection area and then moving it horizontally to the projection pattern is considered an invalid action.

CAUTION

- When using the projection automatic sensing function, ensure that an effective smart key is nearby the rear door.
- The following factors may cause the projection pattern to fail to activate or disappear.
  - The vehicle has been stationary for a long time (48 hours or more);
  - A valid key is left inside the vehicle;
  - The key signal may be affected by electromagnetic interference (e.g., when placed close to a phone or other electronic devices).
  - Stay near the vehicle with the key for about 1 minute.
- If the projection pattern is not lit, manually open and close a door once to reactivate this function.

Trunk Lid Emergency Unlocking

- There is an emergency unlocking cover just above the trunk lock. Open the cover and pull the emergency unlocking rope or lever to open the trunk in an emergency.



REMINDER

- When the vehicle is powered off, the trunk lid can be unlocked from the inside with the emergency cable latch.

Locking/Unlocking with Central Locking

Locking or unlocking with central locking

See ***P97*** for details.

Locking or unlocking doors automatically

- All doors automatically lock at vehicle speeds above 8 km/h.
- Press the START/STOP button to switch the ignition off. Then, all doors are unlocked automatically.

Locking/unlocking all doors concurrently

- With the anti-theft alarm system disarmed, the backlight of the central lock button turns on if the vehicle is locked and off if the vehicle is unlocked.
- Pressing the central lock button locks all doors so that any attempt to open any door from the outside fails. At this time, press the door unlocking button to unlock and press again to open a door.

REMINDER

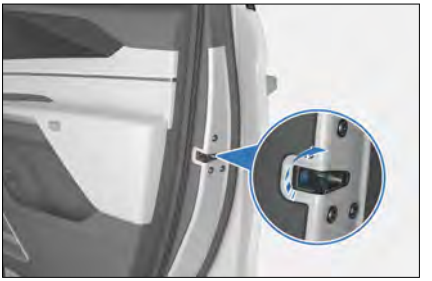
- All doors unlock automatically when the vehicle suffers a strong impact, depending on the impact intensity and accident type.

Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key

When the central locking system or the smart key fails, use the mechanical key for emergency locking or unlocking.

Locking

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.
2. Open the front right door, insert the mechanical key's teeth in the direction of the arrow, lift upward as shown, then close the door to lock it securely.



3. Open both sliding doors, slide the inner lever to the lock position (with the grey portion facing outward), then pull the exterior door handle and close the sliding doors to lock them securely.
4. After locking the other three doors, open the front left door.
5. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out (see ***P58***).
6. Release the handle and close the front left door.
7. Check whether all doors are securely locked.

Unlocking

1. Remove the mechanical key from the smart key.

2. Insert the mechanical key into the keyhole, turn it counterclockwise as far as it can go, return it to the initial position and pull it out.
3. Release the door handle and pull it again to open the front left door.
4. After entering the vehicle, pull the inner handle twice to unlock the front right door; slide the inner lever of the sliding door to the unlock position (with the red portion facing outward) to open the sliding door.

REMINDER

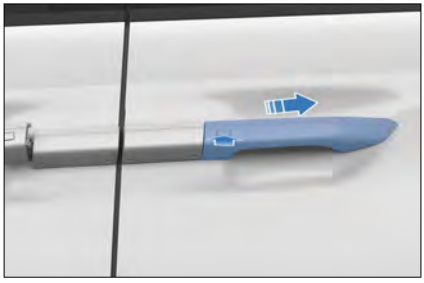
- Prevent excessive force from distorting or breaking the key during the operation.

Power Sliding Doors

Opening/Closing the Sliding Door from Outside

When the vehicle is unlocked with the anti-theft alarm system disarmed:

- Press the microswitch on the power sliding door to open/close it.
- Pull the door handle to open/close the power sliding door.



Opening/Closing the sliding door with smart key

- When the sliding doors are closed, double-press the sliding door opening/closing button on the smart key, and the door on the corresponding side opens.
- When the sliding doors are open, double-press the sliding door opening/closing button on the smart key, and the door on the corresponding side closes.

REMINDER

- When the sliding doors stop, double-press the sliding door button on the key, and the doors move in the opposite direction. When the doors are moving, press the button to stop them.
- When the sliding doors are locked, press the microswitch when carrying the smart key to unlock all doors and open the sliding doors.
- When the sliding doors are unlocked, press the microswitch without the smart key to open the sliding doors.
- When the sliding doors are moving, pressing the microswitch stops the doors. Press it again or pull the handle, the doors move in the opposite direction.
- When the window is opened more than 20%, the sliding doors cannot be fully opened.

Opening/Closing the Sliding Door from Inside

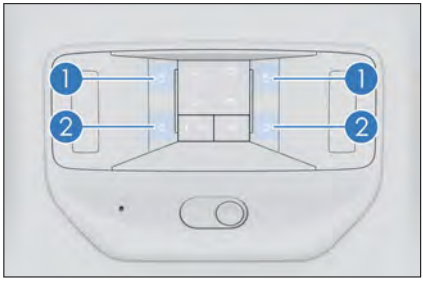
Opening/Closing the power sliding door

- Opening/Closing the power sliding door button is located on the front interior lights. The left button controls the opening/closing of the left sliding door; the right button controls the

opening/closing of the right sliding door.

①Power sliding door opening button

②Power sliding door closing button



The vehicle is unlocked with the anti-theft alarm system disarmed:

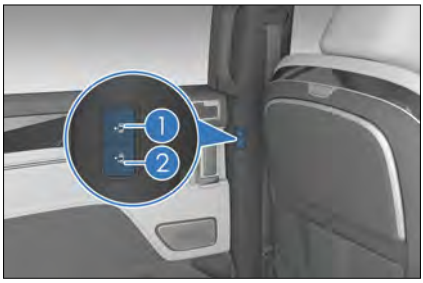
- Press the sliding door switch on the front interior lights for one second, and the door opens automatically with intermittent beeps. Press ① or ② to stop the sliding door. Similarly, press the corresponding switch again to open or close the sliding door.
- Press the sliding door switch ② on the front interior lights for one second, and the door closes automatically with intermittent beeps. Press ① or ② to stop the sliding door. Similarly, press the corresponding switch again to continue opening or closing.

Opening/Closing the power sliding door on the second-row

- Opening/Closing the power sliding door buttons on the second-row Left are located on both sides of the B-pillar. The left button controls the opening/closing of the left sliding door; the right button controls the opening/closing of the right sliding door.

②Power sliding door closing button on the second-row

②Power sliding door opening button on the second-row

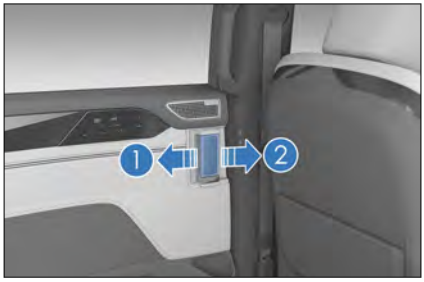


When the vehicle is unlocked with the anti-theft alarm system disarmed:

- Press the sliding door switch ① on the front interior lights for one second, and the door closes automatically with intermittent beeps. Press ① or ② to stop the sliding door. Similarly, press the corresponding switch again to continue opening or closing.
- Press the sliding door switch ② , and the door opens automatically with intermittent beeps. Press ① or ② to stop the sliding door. Similarly, press the corresponding switch again to continue opening or closing.

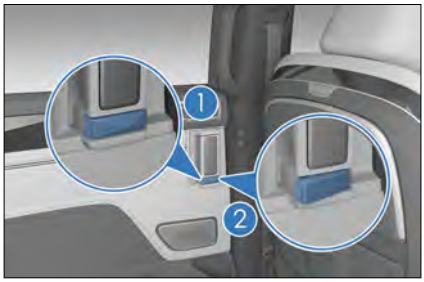
Inner door handle

- Operate the door handle in the direction of ① to open the power sliding door.
- Operate the door handle in the direction of ② to close the power sliding door.
- When the sliding doors are moving, operate the door handle to stop the door.



Sliding door locking block

- Move the sliding block on the inside of the side door like ①, and the sliding door will be locked. At this time, the gray part of the block faces outward, and the door cannot be opened with the interior door handle and the button on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Move the sliding block on the inside of the side door like ②, and the sliding door will be unlocked. At this time, the red part of the block faces outward, and the door can be opened with the power switch, the interior door handle, and the button on the infotainment touchscreen.



WARNING

- Do not allow children to play with door switches inside the vehicle, as this could accidentally open the doors during driving, posing a risk of injury.

WARNING

- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function.

REMINDER

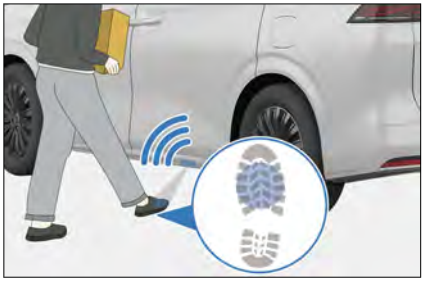
- As this vehicle is equipped with a child protection lock, the rear doors can only be opened with the interior door handle when the child protection lock is disabled.

Opening the Sliding Door by projection sensing

1. When the sliding door is closed, stand within the sliding door sensing area with an active smart key, or unlock the vehicle using the App via NFC or Bluetooth. The vehicle will then automatically detect and project a pattern onto the ground.



2. When the use's foot fully covers the entire projected pattern, the projection light will flash.



3. Once the projection light rapidly flashes, remove your foot to allow the sliding door to open automatically.

CAUTION

- Users should step on the center of the projection pattern, ensuring that at least 95% of the pattern is covered.
- Complete kicking within 1.5-3.5 seconds. Short or prolonged pressure on the pattern with your foot may lead to failed recognition.
- If your foot is not recognized when placed in the projection area or if it remains in the area during the flashing period, please remove your foot, wait a moment, and then place your foot on the projection pattern again, making sure to remove it during the flashing period.
- Placing your foot outside the projection area and then moving it horizontally to the projection pattern is considered an invalid action.
- When using the projection automatic sensing function, ensure that an effective smart key is nearby the sliding door.
- The following factors may cause the projection pattern to fail to activate or disappear.

CAUTION

- The vehicle has been stationary for a long time (48 hours or more).
- A valid key is left inside the vehicle.
- The key signal may be affected by electromagnetic interference (e.g., when placed close to a phone or other electronic devices).
- Stay near the vehicle with the key for about 1 minute.

- If the projection pattern is not lit, manually open and close a door once to reactivate this function.

Dynamic protection of the power sliding door

Sliding Door Anti-pinch function

- During closing, if the sliding door detects an obstacle which interferes with the closing, the anti-pinch function will be triggered with speaker alarms, and the sliding door will stop and move backward by 10 cm.
- During opening, if the sliding door detects an obstacle which interferes with the opening, the anti-pinch function will be triggered with speaker alarms, and the sliding door will close slightly and then stop.

Dynamic protection of the sliding door

- When the vehicle speed is above 3 km/h, the sliding door cannot continue to open, but can only close, and the speaker gives a short alarm.
- When the vehicle speed is above 3 km/h and the sliding door is not completely closed, the speaker continuously gives alarms to remind you to close the door.

WARNING

- Make sure the sliding doors on both sides are properly closed before driving the vehicle.
- Do not operate the door switch buttons or interior door handles while the vehicle is in motion.
- Make sure the surrounding area is safe when opening or closing the sliding doors.
- During the opening or closing of the sliding doors, do not operate the external door handles, internal door handles, or door control buttons to avoid pinching injuries and prevent serious harm.
- During the opening or closing of the sliding doors, do not place feet or hands on the sliding door tracks or door pillars to avoid severe pinching injuries or serious harm.
- If there are children in the vehicle, make sure to enable the child protection lock function so as to prevent children to open the sliding doors by accident.
- Do not allow children to open or close the sliding doors, otherwise their fingers and other body parts may be caught, resulting in personal injuries.
- Do not switch the power sliding door on/off on the ramp to prevent accidents caused by the sudden loss of power of the sliding door. If it happens, to avoid the danger caused by sudden movement of the sliding door, the speed protection mode will be activated until the door is fully opened/closed.

REMINDER

- When the charge port door/fuel filler cap is opened, the sliding door of the corresponding side fails to move automatically and can be opened/closed manually. When opening the sliding door manually, the mechanical block will prevent the door from being completely opened to avoid interference with the charge port/fuel filler cap. When the charge port door/fuel filler cap is closed, the sliding door of the corresponding side resumes its automatic operation.
- When the sliding door is locked, its automatic opening and closing function will be disabled.
- When function is disabled, the corresponding power-assisted attraction function will be retained. When the sliding door is half closed, the power attraction function is still triggered to ensure the complete closing of the sliding door.
- If you want to open the sliding door, it can only be closed and locked with attraction with the vehicle locked.
- When the sliding door is opened/closed, or the anti-pinch function is enabled, the speaker gives alarms.

Smart Access and Start System

Use the smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors and start the vehicle.

Access

Use the valid smart key to unlock or lock the vehicle doors. (see ***P59*** and ***P60*** in this chapter).

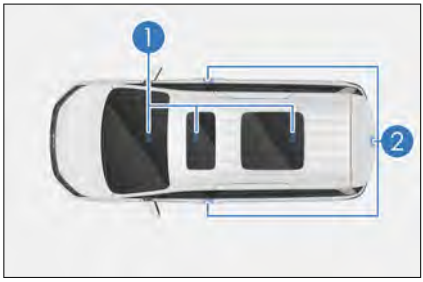
Start-up

With the valid smart key inside, press the brake pedal and the START/STOP button to start the vehicle (see ***P135***).

Antenna positions

① Interior antenna

② Exterior antenna

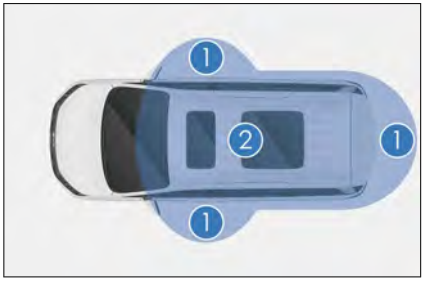


Active area

The smart access and start functions take effect only when the registered key fob is within the active area.

① Active area of the access function: about 1 m from the front door handle and the exterior trunk switch.

② Active area of the start function: inside the cabin.



If another smart key is near this vehicle's smart key, unlocking may take longer than usual, which is normal.

REMINDER

In the following situation, smart access and start system may not work normally:

- There is a strong electromagnetic field nearby, such as TV towers, power stations, and broadcasting stations.
- The smart key is being carried along with a two-way radio, mobile phone or other communication devices.
- The smart key is in contact with or covered by a metal object.
- The door handle is operated too quickly.
- The smart key is too close to the handle.
- Another wireless remote control function is being used nearby.
- When the smart key battery runs out.
- The smart key is close to high-voltage equipment or equipment that produces noise.
- The smart key is being carried along with another smart key or radio-wave-emitting device.
- Even within the active area, the smart key may not work properly in certain locations, for example, on the dashboard, in the glove box, or on the floor.

- If the smart access system is not working properly and it is impossible to enter the vehicle, the mechanical key can be used to lock/unlock the front left door, or the wireless remote

control function can be used to lock/ unlock all doors.

- Pressing the START/STOP button may not enable the start function due to:
  - If the electronic smart key does not work, the smart key system warning indicator on the combination instrument flashes, and the message "Low key battery" is displayed on the information display screen in the middle of the combination instrument, indicating that the key battery may have run out.
  - The vehicle is started repeatedly in a short time. Wait for 10 seconds before starting the vehicle.
- If the smart access and start system cannot work properly due to system failures, bring all smart keys to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.

Saving battery power

- The key fob communicates with the vehicle even when the vehicle is not running. Therefore, do not leave the smart key in the vehicle or within 2 meters from the vehicle.
- Receiving strong electromagnetic waves for a long time drains the battery of the smart key quickly. The smart key must be kept at least one meter away from electrical equipment that generates a magnetic field, such as the following devices:
  - Television
  - Personal computer
  - Phone charger
  - Electroliers
  - Fluorescent desk lamp

Mechanical Child Protection Lock

Child protection locks are designed to prevent children sitting in the rear seats from inadvertently opening the rear doors. Such locks are provided on both sides of the rear doors.

Activating the child protection lock

- Move the latch in the direction of arrow① to turn on the child protection lock. The door cannot be opened from inside. To open this door, use the exterior door handle To open this door, use the exterior door handle.

Deactivating the child protection lock

- Move the latch in the direction of arrow② to turn off the child protection lock. The door can be opened from inside.



WARNING

- Before driving, especially when a child is in the vehicle, ensure that the doors are closed and the child protection lock function is enabled.
- Proper use of seat belts and activation of child protection lock helps prevent the driver and passengers from being thrown out of the vehicle in an accident, and

WARNING

also prevents a door from being opened accidentally.

Seats

Seat Precautions

- Adjust the driver's seat so that the pedals, steering wheel, and dashboard controls are within the driver's easy control.
- The most effective safeguard while driving is to always rest well on the upright seatback, with seat belt in the right position.
- Do not fold or unfold the rear seats when the vehicle is in motion.
- Secure your luggage appropriately to prevent it from skidding or moving. Luggage in the vehicle should not be higher than seatbacks.
- The head support can only protect your head when it is in the proper position. Remember to adjust it to the proper position if it has been moved.

WARNING

- Sitting on a folded seatback, in the trunk, or on the cargo is prohibited. Improper seating position or improperly fastened seat belts can result in personal injuries in case of emergency braking or a collision.
- Do not place any items under the seats. The driver may lose control of the vehicle because items placed there affect the seat locking mechanism, causing the seat to move suddenly.

WARNING

- When adjusting a seat, ensure sufficient space around the seat and in the rear seating area for children, passengers, or pets there. Be careful not to squeeze or hit children, occupants, or pets in the rear seat area.
- When adjusting a seat, ensure sufficient space between your feet and those of surrounding passengers to avoid injury.
- When adjusting the seat, do not place your hand under the seat or near its operating parts, to prevent being crushed.
- After adjusting the seatback, lean back to confirm the seatback has been locked. Seatbacks that are not fully locked can cause personal injuries in an accident or emergency braking.
- Do not put the seatback down while driving or riding in the vehicle. Doing so makes it impossible to wear a seat belt correctly. The occupant risks being hit on the neck or other parts of the body by the shoulder belt, or slipping out of the waist belt, resulting in serious injuries.
- Do not adjust the driver's seat while the vehicle is in motion, because the unpredictable seat movement so cause could render the vehicle out of control
- Do not drive the vehicle until occupants are seated properly.
- Do not allow children to adjust the seat without adult supervision to avoid any injury.

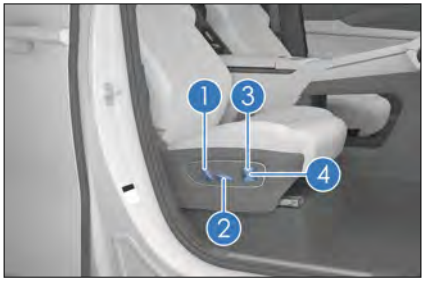
CAUTION

- Be careful not to damage the seat belts when folding seats.
- Adjust the seat position before fastening the seat belt.
- As seat area is not waterproof, a large amount of liquid can easily cause the controller to short-circuit and burn out.

Front seats

Adjusting Front Seat with Power

Front seat adjustment includes seatback angle adjustment, position adjustment, lumbar support adjustment*, and massage adjustment*. The front passenger's seat does not support height adjustment and cushion angle adjustment. Refer to the following according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.



① Seatback angle adjustment switch

- Tilt the switch backward or forward to recline seatback.

② seat position adjustment

- Seat position adjustment includes forward/backward adjustment, cushion angle adjustment*, and height adjustment*.
- Toggle the seat position adjustment switch back or forth to move the seat backward or forward.
- Move the front end of the switch up or down to change the seat base angle*.
- Move the rear end of the switch up or down to raise or lower the seat*.

③ Lumbar support adjustment*

- Press the front, rear, upper, or lower part of the switch to adjust the lumbar support.

④ Seat massage switch*

- The massage button is at the center of the lumbar support adjustment button. Press it to start or stop massage. You can also enable or disable the massage function on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Massage cannot be used with lumbar support activated. When the massage is activated, the direction buttons work for massage adjustment; otherwise, they work for lumbar support adjustment.
- In massage mode, the upper and lower buttons can be used to switch massage patterns, and the left and right buttons to adjust the massage intensity. Switching massage patterns does not alter massage intensity.
- Your last massage pattern and intensity choices are remembered.
- Press the up button to switch between patterns in sequence of "wave (default) → pulse → stretch → waist (relax) → shoulder (relieve) → wave". Press the down button to switch in the reverse order.
- The massage comes in three intensity levels: Low, Medium (default) and High. Press the left or right button to

switch to High or Low. These levels do not circulate.

- The massage mode will automatically end after 15 minutes if there is no further operation following the last adjustment action. To continue, simply press the seat massage button or activate the massage via the infotainment touchscreen.

CAUTION

- Releasing the switch stops the seat. Do not place anything under the seat as this may clog seat movement.
- Do not move the front seats too far forward to avoid contact with the roof or sun visor.

Second-Row Adjustment Switch for Front Passenger Seat*

① Seatback angle adjustment switch of the front passenger's seat

- Tilt the switch backward or forward to recline seatback of the front passenger' s seat.

② Seat position adjustment of the front passenger's seat

- Move the switch forward or rearward to change the seat fore and aft position.



Front Seat Bed Mode *

- If the vehicle is euipped with bed mode, remove the front head supports before using the mode.
- Go to the infotainment touchscreen → Bottom navigation bar , access the seat mode adjustment interface and activate the “Comfortable Large Bed” button. A pop-up prompt on the infotainment touchscreen will remind the user to remove the driver's/ front passenger's head support. Once confirmed, the bed mode is activated, and the front seats and second-row seats automatically adjust the slide rail positions and head support angles.

WARNING

- Verify that the front, second-row, and third-row seats are all unoccupied before activating the front seat's bed mode.
- If the front seat head support is not removed before activating bed mode, the anti-pinch mode will be triggered.

Second-Row Seats

Adjusting Second-Row Seats Manually*

Second-row seats allow manual adjustments for seat position and seatback angle. Choose the following methods according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

Seat position adjustment

- Grasp the adjustment handle and lift it upward to unlock the second-row seat tracks. Then, use slight body pressure to slide the seat forward or backward to the desired position, and release the handle.
- After adjusting the seat, always check that it is securely locked into place

(for example, a locking sound is heard) by attempting to push it forward and backward.



Adjusting the seatback

- Lift the seatback adjustment handle to unlock the second-row seatback. Lean against the seatback and tilt it forward or backward to the desired position, then release the handle.



Second-Row Armrest Adjustment*

- The height of the armrest of the second-row seat can be adjusted within a certain range.

Accessing the third-row seats

- The third row can be accessed from the middle of the second row.
- Lift the armrest of the second row seat before accessing the third row seat.



Adjusting Second-Row Aviation-Style Seat*

Second-row seat adjustment includes position adjustment, seatback angle adjustment, lumbar support adjustment, massage adjustment*, and leg support adjustment. Choose the following methods according to the actual configuration of your vehicle. The left and right seats can be adjusted independently.

① Reset button*

- When the second-row seats are reclined, pressing this button will return the seats to their position before reclining.

② Second-row seat control panel switch

- Press the switch button to slide the seat armrest cover backward and reveal the seat control panel; press the switch button again to slide the cover back to its original position and close the seat control panel.



③ Seat position adjustment switch

- Press the front end of the switch button to move the seat forward as a whole; press the back end of the switch button to move the seat backward as a whole.

Seat Position Adjustment Initialization

- To initialize the seat position adjustment, press and hold the seat position adjustment switch forward until the seat stops moving, then release. Press and hold the forward seat adjustment switch for more than 15 seconds until the seat begins to self-calibrate. Do not touch the seat adjustment switches during the self-calibration process, as this may interrupt the initialization. Calibration is complete when the seat stops at the middle position.

⚠ CAUTION

- Before the seat position adjustment initialization, do not sit in the second-row seats and clear any items around the seats.
- During the seat position adjustment initialization process, do not sit in the second-row seats or touch the seats to avoid injury.
- Do not initialize the seat position while the vehicle is in motion.

④ Seatback angle adjustment switch

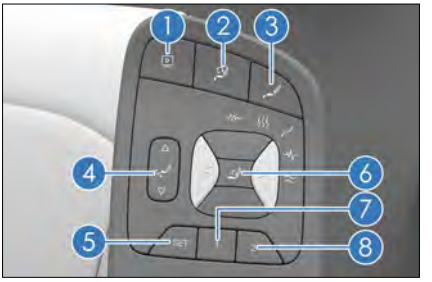
- Press the front end of the switch button to recline the seat back forward; press the back end of the switch button to recline the seat back backward.

⑤ Reset button*

- When the second-row seats are in any position and angle, pressing this button will return the seats to their designed state.

Second-row seat control panel*

- The second-row seat control panel is located inside the cover of the left/ right armrest of the second-row seats.



① In-vehicle cinema display power button*: Turns on/off the in-vehicle cinema display.

② Reset button: When there is an occupant in the second-row seats or a child seat is installed, pressing this button will return the seats to their designed position.

③ Recline button: Press this button to raise the leg rest, recline the seat back, and activate the lumbar support, switching to the aviation seat mode.

④ Leg support adjustment button: Press the △ or ▽ buttons to adjust the leg rest position.

⑤ Memory setting button: After pressing this button, press either Memory Position 1 or Memory Position 2 within 3 seconds to complete and save the current seat position settings.

⑥ Massage*/Lumbar Support Button: Press this button to start the massage* and lumbar support function, these two functions can not work together. When massage function* is started, press the front/back/left/right buttons on the switch to adjust the functions, and when it is closed, press the front/back/left/right buttons on the switch to adjust the lumbar support button. The backlight for the massage has five modes, which

can be adjusted in the same way as the function mode, and the lights will illuminate when adjusting the function via the front central control screen or through voice commands.

⑦ Memory position 1 button*: If memory position 1 is already set, press this button to execute the memory position 1 response. If not already set, first press the memory setting "SET" button, and then press this button within 3 seconds to save the first seat position.

⑧ Memory position 2 button*: If memory position 2 is already set, press this button to execute the memory position 2 response. If not already set, first press the memory setting "SET" button, and then press this button within 3 seconds to save the second seat position.

WARNING

- Do not activate the recline or reset buttons when there are occupants in the rear seats to avoid injuring the rear passengers.
- During the reclining and reseting processes, you can press any of the second-row seat adjustment buttons to stop the movement. Pressing the button again will resume the movement from where it left off.
- The interval time for setting Memory Position 1 and Memory Position 2 needs to be 3 seconds or more.
- The position recall operation stops with a beep when "SET", "1", or "2" is pressed during recalling.

Memory System*

Memory switch position

- On the infotainment touchscreen, you can set two seat positions to be memorized in → **Seat Adjustment**.

Memory setting conditions

- The ignition has been switched on and the vehicle speed is zero.
- The driver's seat and side mirrors have been adjusted to the desired positions.
- No operation is made on the driver's seat and side mirrors.

Memory setting method

- Press and hold any position button on the seat memory setting interface. Then the positions of the seats and side mirrors will be recorded, and the memory setting finishes.

REMINDER

- If the position button on the memory switch has already been set, the position set will be overwritten.

Memory recall function

Memory recall function with the ignition on

- When the vehicle is in Park, the memory system and side mirrors will perform memory recall when the memory system switch is tapped if the following conditions are met:
  - The anti-theft alarm system has disarmed.
  - The vehicle speed is zero.
  - Memory switch signals are valid.
  - No operation is made on the driver's seat and side mirrors.
- You can interrupt the current memory recall operation by the following methods:

- Press or toggle any of the driver's seat adjustment switches.
- Tap any position button on the seat memory setting interface of the infotainment system.

WARNING

- Ensure there are no obstacles around the seat before activating the seat memory recall function.
- Ensure that no part of your body is within the seat's movement range during the seat memory recall process.
- Do not allow children to operate the memory switches to prevent any injury during seat movement.

Automatic driver seat

- Automatic backward:
  - This feature enables the seat (if located in the front section of its full travel) to automatically move back for a certain distance after the driver unlocks the vehicle with the smart key and opens the driver's door. This makes it easy for the driver to enter.
  - For easy exiting, this feature also works when the vehicle power is switched from "START" to "STOP" and the driver's door is opened.
- Automatic forward:
  - When the vehicle power is switched from "STOP" to "START" and the driver's door is closed, the seat will automatically move forward to the position before the last power-off if no horizontal position adjustment is performed after the auto-back feature is triggered upon the last power-off.
  - If no horizontal position adjustment is performed after the auto-back feature is triggered for easy exiting, the seat will automatically move forward after the driver's door is closed.
- Settings
  - To enable or disable Automatic Driver Seat, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving** → **Automatic Front/Rear Seat**.
  - The automatic driver seat function can be interrupted by closing the driver's door while the seat is moving backward or by opening the driver's door or the front passenger's while the seat is moving forward.

Seat Ventilation/Heating*

- This vehicle features front-row and second-row seat ventilation. Seat heating is available on select trims.* Configurations of the actual vehicle prevail.
- Enable or disable seat ventilation and heating by sliding down the "Convenient" interface on the status bar at the top of the infotainment touchscreen or by going to the infotainment touchscreen → .
- You can also enable or disable second-row seat ventilation and heating via the second-row control panel.

Heating adjustment*

- Heated seat: You can adjust the heating level (three levels available) through the seat heating switch on the infotainment touchscreen or the control panel.
  - The heating indicator is off by default after each power-on.
  - Press the switch first. The seat heater works in the high-temperature mode,

and the three heating indicators light up at the same time.

- Press the switch for the second time after it returns to the original position. The seat heater works in the low-temperature mode, two indicators light up, and one indicator goes out.
- Press the switch for the third time after it returns to the original position. The seat heater works in the low-temperature mode, one indicator lights up, and two indicator go out.
- Press the switch for the fourth time after it returns to the original position. The heating is deactivated, and three indicators all go out.

Ventilation adjustment*

- Ventilated seat: Users can adjust the three fan speed levels by operating the seat heating switch on the infotainment touchscreen or the A/C control panel.
  - The ventilation indicator is off by default after each power-on.
  - Press the switch first. The ventilation fan works at a high speed, and three ventilation indicators light up.
  - Press the switch for the second time after it returns to the original position. The seat ventilation works in the low-temperature mode, two indicator light up, and one indicator goes out.
  - Press the switch for the third time after it returns to the original position. The seat ventilation works in the low-speed mode, one indicator lights up, and two indicators go out.
  - Press the switch for the fourth time after it returns to the original position. The ventilation is deactivated, and three indicators all go out.

Ventilation and heating functions cannot be turned on at the same time.

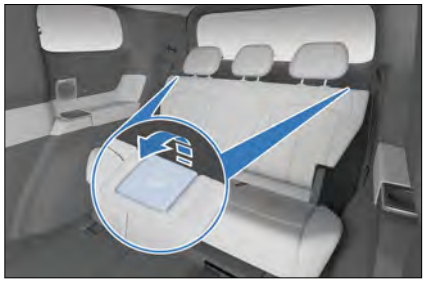
- When heated seat is active, turning on the ventilator stops it.
- When ventilated seat is active, turning on the heater stops it.

Third-Row Seats

Adjusting third-row seatback manually*

Method 1:

- Adjusting seatback angle
  - Passengers can adjust the seatback angle using the adjustment handles on both sides of the upper part of the seatback.
  - Pull up the seat adjustment cord, and lean back or forward to adjust the seatback angle. Release it when you have found the desired position.



- Folding the seatback
  - Pull up the seat adjustment handle, adjust the backrest and seat cushion forward, and release the handle.

Method 2:

- Adjusting seatback angle
  - When seated behind the seat, passengers can unlock the seatback

by pulling the straps on both sides downward or backward.

- Tilt forward or backward, adjust the backrest to the desired position and loosen the lap belt.



- Folding the seatback
  - Pull down or pull back on both sides of the lap belt to unlock the backrest. Tilt forward, adjust the backrest and seat cushion folding, and loosen the lap belt.

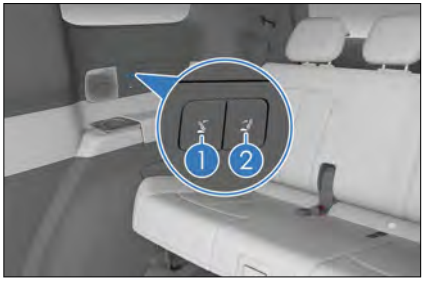
Adjusting third-row seatback with power*

- The button for adjusting the seatback angle of the rear seats is located on the armrests on the left and right sides of the rear seats.

  ① Seatback forward recline Button

  ② Seatback backward recline Button

- Adjusting seatback angle： Press the seatback adjustment button, adjust the seatback to the desired position, and then release the button.

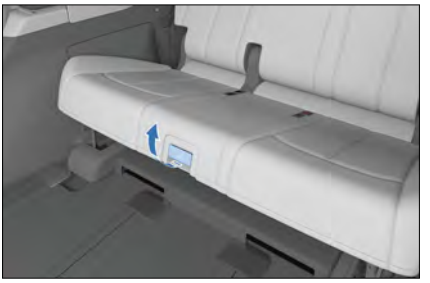


- Backrest Fold Adjustment: Press the backrest forward adjustment button to fold and flatten the backrest forward, then release the button.

Adjusting third-row seats forward and backward*

Method one：

- There is an adjustment handle in front of the middle seat cushion in the third row.
- Move the adjustment handle on the front side of the seat cushion to adjust seat position.



Method two:

- There is an adjustment handle behind the middle seat cushion in the third row.
- Open the rear door and operate the adjustment handle behind the seat cushion to adjust the seat’ s fore-aft position.



Folding third-row seats manually*

- The third-row seats can be folded backward as a unit into the trunk for storage.

1. Clear out the trunk.
2. Adjust the head supports to the lowest position.
3. Unlock lever ③ and move the seat to the rearmost position.
4. Pull the side straps ② and ④ on both sides to fold forward and lay flat the seatback.
5. Pull the central strap ① on the seatback to flip the seat backward and lay it flat, then secure it with a safety hook.



Folding third-row seats with power*

- The third-row seats can be folded backward as a unit into the trunk for storage.

1. Clear out the trunk.
2. Adjust the seats to the rearmost position by using the third-row adjusting handle.
3. Press the folding button in seat adjustment switches in the trunk.

⚠ CAUTION

- When the folding button is pressed, if a voice prompts to move the seat to the rearmost position, confirm that the slide rails on both sides of the third-row seats are already locked in place. Apply backward force to the shoulder-level areas of the third-row seats to secure the slide rails at the rearmost position, then press the folding button again.

- The forward/backward positions and seatback folding of the third-row seats can be adjusted via the lever in front of the middle cushion and the adjustment handles on both sides of the seatback.

⚠ CAUTION

- Pay attention to the followings when folding the seats:
  - Do not put the seatback down with the vehicle running.
  - Do not fold the seats with the vehicle running.
  - Occupants should be careful when accessing the third-row seats.
  - Make sure the thied-row seats are fully locked before driving.
- The seatback adjustment handle and folding cord cannot be operated at the same time. Straighten the seatback and reset the cord if there is a mis-operation.

Trunk Seat Adjustment Switch*

Suspension adjustment switch is located on the left side of the trunk.

① Left seat backrest recline button: The right seat backrest in the third row can be adjusted backward.

② Left seat backrest recline button: The right seat backrest in the third row can be adjusted backward.

③ One-touch folding button: This can fold and stow the third-row seats into the trunk.



④ One-touch Reset Button:* This can restore the third-row seats to their designed position.

⑤ Right seat backrest recline button: The right seat backrest in the third row can be adjusted backward.

⑥ Right seat backrest recline button: The right seat backrest in the third row can be adjusted backward.

WARNING

- Do not activate the one-touch folding function when there is an occupant in the third-row seat.
- Ensure the vehicle is safely parked before using the one-touch folding function.
- When activating the one-touch folding function, ensure that the second-row seat tracks are in their designed position or slightly forward of the designed position.
- If the "One-touch Flip" or "One-touch Reset" button is pressed during the flipping process, the flipping will immediately stop. If you press the "one-touch folding" button again, the seat folding action will continue. If you press the "one-touch reset" button again, the seat will return to its designed position.

CAUTION

- Before using the "one-touch folding" button to stow the third-row seats, please clear any items from the trunk.
- During the seat adjustment process, pressing the one-touch reset button will stop the adjustment and return the seat to its designed position.

Head Supports

Adjusting Front-Seat Head Supports

- Lifting a head support
  - Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.
- Lowering a head support
  - Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, slightly adjust the head support, and release the button after hearing a locking sound.



- Removing a head support
  - Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support and release the button.
- Installing a head support
  - Insert the head support post into the bushing with the grooves facing forward. Press the head support adjustment button, push down the head support to a proper position, and then release the button.

Adjusting head support flanks*

- Move the head support flanks manually to adjust their the wrapping, so that the head support fits the head better, thus increasing comfort. Press the flanks to restore them to their original state when not in use.

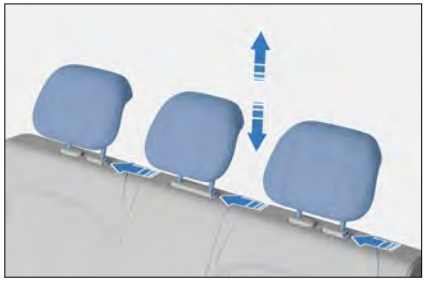
Adjusting second-row head supports

- The second-row head supports can be moved up/down, and their flanks can also be adjusted. The adjustment method is the same as the front-seat head supports adjustment method.

Adjusting Third-Row Seat Head Supports

Adjusting head supports manually

- Lifting a head support
  - Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the appropriate position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.
- Lowering a head support
  - Press and hold the head support adjustment button, lower the head support to a proper position, and release the button after hearing a locking sound.



- Removing a head support
  - Press and hold the head support adjustment button, remove the head support and release the button.
- Installing a head support
  - Insert the head support post into the bushing with the grooves facing forward. Press the head support adjustment button, push down the head support to a proper position, and then release the button.

Adjusting head supports with power*

- Lifting a head support
  - Lift the head support in the direction of its post until it is in the highest position, and then release it until a locking sound is heard.
- Lowering a head support
  - Press the head support adjustment button to make the head support lower automatically.

⚠ CAUTION

- In the one-touch folding process of the third-row seats, if the automatic lowering function is stuck and the head supports fails to automatically lower to the lowest position, lower them manually.

- Head supports of the power seats cannot be removed.

WARNING

- Head supports protect vehicle occupants from head and neck injuries. Adjust the head support so that its center aligns with the back of your head for maximum protection. Adjust the head support to the proper position based on your actual height.
- When adjusting head support height, align the occupant's ear tip line with the center line of the head support.
- After adjusting the head support, ensure that it is locked into position.

WARNING

- Do not drive the vehicle without head supports. Failing to install or incorrectly installing the headrest can cause serious injury to occupants during emergency braking or accidents.
- Do not attach any objects to the head support levers.

Steering Wheel

Steering Wheel Switches



1 AVM

8 Custom

2 Custom

3 Distance +

4 Driver assistance*

5 Reset/+ or Set/- rocker switch

6 Driving information

7 Distance -

9 Speech recognition

10 Right

11 Instrument cluster/Back

12 Scroll button

13 Call

14 Left

Left-hand buttons

Reset/+ or Set/- rocker switch

- Reset/+: Activates the adaptive cruise control (ACC) system and uses the previous system settings.
- Settings/-: Sets the current speed to the target cruise speed.

Distance +

- Increases the time-based following distance from the vehicle ahead by one level each time when it is pressed with ACC active. A total of four levels are available.

Distance -

- Decreases the time-based following distance from the vehicle ahead by one level each time when it is pressed with ACC active. A total of four levels are available.

Driver assistance*

- Press this button to enable or disable ACC.

REMINDER

- For instructions on using cruise control, see ***P147***.

Left/Right custom buttons

- Press for a long time to enter the custom button setting interface to select the custom function button; press for a short time to execute the custom function.

AVM

- Enables or disables AVM.

Driving information

- Briefly press to cycle through the driving information interfaces, and press and hold to clear the relevant driving information.
- Using driving information button to switch following functions:
  - Tire pressure (by default): displays tire temperature and pressure readings from the direct tire pressure monitoring.
  - The average energy consumption over the last 50 km: displays the average energy consumption over the last 50 km. Press and hold the driving information button to reset the data.
  - Cumulative average energy consumption: displays cumulative average energy consumption information.
  - Instantaneous fuel consumption: displays instantaneous fuel consumption information.
  - Charging SOC/fuel consumption: displays external charging SOC and fuel consumption information. Press and hold the driving information button to reset the data.

Right-hand buttons

Scroll button

- Roll the button upward to increase the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the highest.
- Roll the button downward to decrease the volume. The button is non-operational when the volume reaches the lowest.
- Press down the button to mute.

Left/Right button

- When the infotainment system is in radio mode:
  - Press the ◁ button to play the previous radio station.
  - Press the ▷ button to play the next radio station.
- When the infotainment system is in USB/Bluetooth music/third-party music app/other modes:
  - Press the ◁ button to play the previous track (track number -1).
  - Press the ◁ button to select a record upward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.
  - Press the ▷ button to play the next track (track number +1).
  - Press the ▷ button to select a record downward on the Bluetooth call record or phonebook screen.

Call

- Press this button to make or receive a call (the audio system is muted at the same time).
- When a Bluetooth-unrelated screen is currently displayed, press this button to switch to the phone selection screen if Bluetooth is disconnected, or to the dial screen if Bluetooth is connected.
- After entering a phone number on the dial screen or selecting a record on the call log or contacts screen, press this button to dial the number.
- When Bluetooth is connected, but no phone number is entered on the Dial screen, press this button to switch to the call log screen. Press this button again to call the first dialed number on the call history.

Speech recognition

- Press this button to activate speech recognition on the infotainment touchscreen, with which you can record voice commands.
- Press a second time to exit the screen.

Instrument cluster/Back

- When not on the Bluetooth call screen, briefly press the instrument/back button to cycle through the instrument menu settings. Hold the button to enter the confirmation interface.
- Instrument menu cycles through the following functions:
  - Infotainment system (by default): use the steering wheel button ◁ and ▷ to switch between previous/next tracks. Adjust the volume by scroll the right-side roller.
  - Navigation: the compact navigation display is shown by default. The simplified, compact, and full-screen navigation can be switched via the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Speed limit reminder settings: press and hold the right-side roller to enter the speed setting interface. Scroll the roller to set the speed limit or disable the speed limit reminder. Press the roller briefly to confirm and exit.

- Acceleration timer: switch the vehicle to Sport mode, and then press and hold the right-side roller to enter the acceleration timer.

- When on the Bluetooth call screen, press this button to end the call.

Horn

- Press the horn button area to honk the horn, and release to stop honking.

CAUTION

- Avoid pressing honking for too long, as the horn may be damaged.

REMINDER

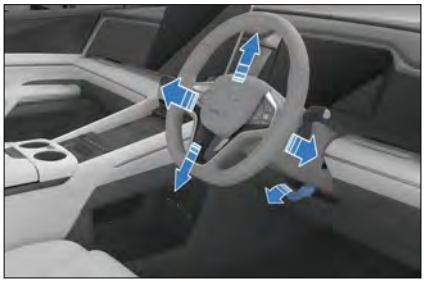
- Observe the traffic laws and use the horn properly.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually

To adjust the steering wheel position, hold it and operate as follows:

- Press the steering wheel adjustment handle, move the steering wheel to the desired angle, or adjust it to the desired axial position, and restore the handle to the locked position.



WARNING

- Never adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this is under risk of impaired vehicle control, which can lead to accidents.
- After adjusting the steering wheel, move it up and down to verify that it is securely locked.

Power-Assisted Steering Mode Settings

- The level of steering assistance can be adjusted to individual preferences.
- To set the steering mode, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**, or **Application center** → **Disus** App* → **Brake Assist Mode**, and select Comfort or Sport.

REMINDER

- Setting the steering mode to sport mode is suggested if the steering wheel feels light when the vehicle is running at a high speed. Steering mode can only be changed in normal terrain mode with LKA off and a vehicle speed lower than 80 km/h.

Wipers

Wiper Switch

Windshield Wipers and Washer

Front wipers

- The lever is used to control the front windshield wipers and washer among the following five modes:
  - 0 : OFF

- : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 1
- : Auto/Intermittent wipers level 2
- : Slow
- : Fast

- To select a mode, slide the control button up or down.
- In slow and fast modes, the wipers operates continuously.



- Enable "Auto Wiper" on the infotainment touchscreen→ ⚙ → **Vehicle** → **Comfort Driving**. The wipers swipe once, enter the automatic mode, and then work based on the rain intensity.
- In auto mode, adjusting the wiper button will change the auto wipers level.

WARNING

- With the ignition on and the wiper switch at auto mode, touching the glass on the top of the sensor by hand or wiping it with a cloth may cause the wiper to work and thus lead to an accident.

CAUTION

- Turn off the auto wipers vehicle washes, in dry weather, or on rain-free days, to prevent inadvertent wiper operation.
- If snow or other debris causes the wipers to stop mid-operation, turn off the wipers and park the vehicle in a safe location. Then clear the snow or debris to allow the wipers to function correctly.
- The sensor may occasionally fail to properly detect snowflakes, as they have various shapes, which could lead to wiper malfunction. After the snow melts, the wipers may automatically activate.

- To operate the wipers in point-wiping mode, press the button at the end of the control lever to the first position. The wipers wipe at a low speed until the button is released.



Front windshield washer

- To clean the front windshield, press the button at the end of the control lever to the second position. The washer spray continuously, and the wipers will start working afterward.
- When the stick is released, or when it is held for over 10 seconds, the washer spray stops, and the wipers stop after operating for 3–4 cycles.

Rear wiper

- Rotate the middle roller of the wiper switch to the position and the rear wiper enters intermittent mode.
- The rear wiper stops working when the middle roller of the wiper switch is set to the position or when the trunk lid is opened.
- Rotate the middle roller of the wiper switch to the position and hold it to activate the rear windshield wiper and washer simultaneously.



- Rotate the middle roller of the wiper switch to the position and release it. The wiper will operate 2 to 3 times and stop after washing fluid has been sprayed.

CAUTION

- Check and clean the wiper blades at regular intervals.
- Avoid using the wipers immediately after it starts raining, as the rain mixed with mud and dust will not clean the windshield effectively and may instead cause instant blurred vision, affecting driving safety.
- Use cleaning agent for glass. The use of water, or another type of detergent, may damage the washer motor.
- Do not operate the washer for over 10 seconds, or when the

CAUTION

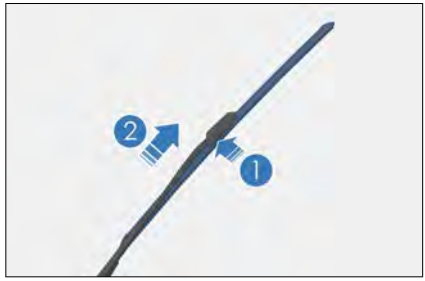
washer fluid tank is empty, as those may cause motor overheating or damage.

Replacing Wiper Blades

- Inspect front/rear wiper blades for cracks or partial hardening at least every six months. If they are noted, replace wiper blades. Otherwise, the windshield will streak or will be left unclean after wiping.
- With the ignition on, turn on the wiper service function in infotainment touchscreen → → **Drive** → **Overhaul**. When the corresponding wiper service function is enabled, the wipers rotate out automatically for easy maintenance and replacement.

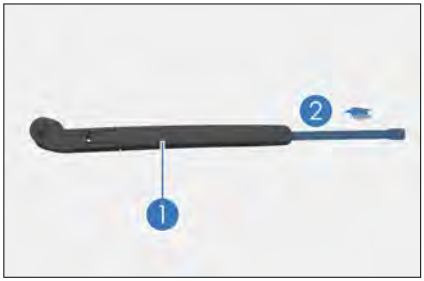
Replacing front wiper

1. Pull up the wiper arm at the driver side, and then pull up the other at the passenger side.
2. Press the wiper lock button ①.
3. Hold the wiper blade and pull it out along the indicated direction ②.
4. Hold one end of the spray hose on the wiper arm and pull it away from the wiper blade.
5. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



Replacing rear wipers

1. Pull up the wiper arm.
2. Hold the wiper in position ①, and pull the blade out along the indicated direction.
3. When installing a new wiper blade, follow the reverse procedure.



CAUTION

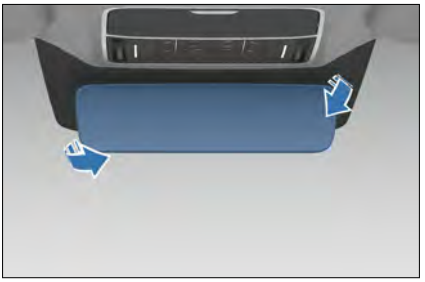
- Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are pulled up, as this may damage the hood and wiper arms.
- Handle wiper blades with care. Do not push the wiper arm to let the wiper blade straightly strike onto the windshield.
- Do not bend the wiper blade, and do not obstruct the wiper blade when the wiper is in operation.
- In rainy and snowy days in winter, it is recommended to go to the overhaul interface to enable front wiper check. Manually lift the front wipers to prevent them from freezing.

For wiper blade maintenance, see ***P244***.

Mirrors

Rearview Mirror

Move the interior rearview mirror up or down, left or right to a suitable position.



WARNING

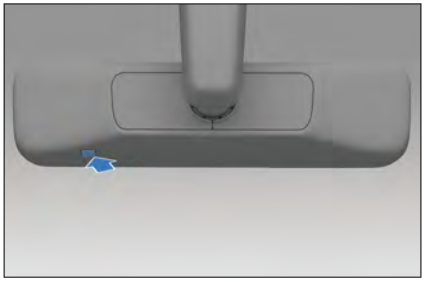
- Do not hang heavy objects from the interior rearview mirror, or shake or drag it with force.
- When manually adjusting the interior rearview mirror, do not forcibly adjust the stuck mirror to avoid the mirror falling off.
- Adjusting the interior rearview mirror before driving. Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.

Streaming Interior Rearview Mirror*

The streaming interior rearview mirror operates in two operational modes: streaming mode and conventional mirror mode.

- Streaming mode
  - The streaming media rearview mirror can be turned on or off through the physical switch button (rear side of rear view mirror) or by the infotainment touchscreen →

→ **Audio&Display** → **Streaming Rearview Mirror**.



- When enabled, real-time images captured by the rear camera can be displayed on the streaming rearview mirror screen. Turn on screen adjustment on the infotainment touchscreen → → **Audio&Display** → **Streaming Rearview Mirror**. Then, use the right and left direction buttons on the right of the steer wheel to adjust the field of view zoom, view height, and screen luminance. Use the right scroll button on the steer wheel to adjust the its gear.

REMINDER

- Use the button on the right side of the steering wheel to adjust the streaming rearview mirror according to the prompt information on the infotainment touchscreen.The infotainment touchscreen is only used for prompt, and the streaming media rearview mirror cannot be adjusted on it.
- Since the interior rearview mirror includes a traditional flat mirror function, the mirror effect and the streaming media image may appear simultaneously in strong light conditions, causing a ghosting phenomenon. In this case, manually adjust the interior rearview mirror angle to avoid ghosting and improve the visual field effect.

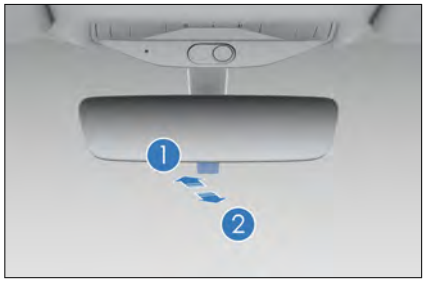
REMINDER

- Traditional interior rearview mirror mode
  - When the streaming mode is turned off, the rearview mirror enters the traditional rearview mirror mode. In this mode, the rearview mirror presents the mirror effect.

Manual Anti-glare Interior Rearview Mirror*

Interior rearview mirror has two working modes: normal mode and anti-glare mode.

- Normal mode: Rotate the control lever to ① to get the clearest mirror image.

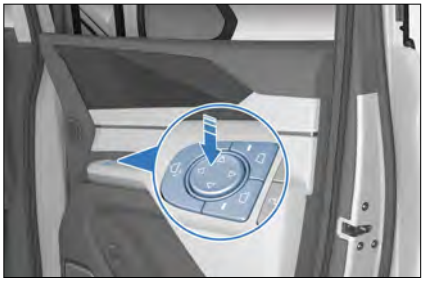


- Anti-glare mode: Rotate the control lever to ② to effectively reduce interference from headlights of rear vehicles at night. Note that anti-glare may lower the clarity of rear visual field.

Side Mirrors

Use the associated switches to adjust the side mirrors to see the sides of the vehicle.

- Selection switches: selects the side mirror to be adjusted.
  - : left side mirror
  - : right side mirror
- Side mirror adjustment buttons : Press this button to adjust the side mirror lens to an appropriate position.



Folding Side Mirrors

- Fold switch : Press it to fold the side mirrors with power. Press again to unfold the mirrors.
- Both side mirrors fold automatically when the anti-theft alarm system is armed, and extend automatically when disarmed.
- To enable or disable side mirror auto fold, go to infotainment touchscreen → → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving** → **Side Mirrors**.

WARNING

- Adjust the side mirrors before driving. Do not adjust the side mirrors while driving. This may distract your attention, causing accidents.

REMINDER

- Do not operate the controller or scrape the surfaces of frozen side mirrors. Use de-icer spray to remove the ice.
- The side mirrors have reverse tilt function*: The power side mirrors automatically tilt downward when the vehicle is reversing.

Switches

Light Switches

- The automatic lights, position lights, low beam, rear fog lights, and daytime running lights switches are integrated into the infotainment system.
- To turn off the auto light, position light, low beam, rear fog light and daytime running light, go to the infotainment touchscreen → → **Light** → **Exterior Light**.

Turn signals

- Push up the switch lever to activate the right turn signal and down to activate the left turn signal.



High beam and flash-to-pass function

- Push forward to turn on the high beams and backward to activate the flash-to-pass function.



REMINDER

- The light intensity sensor is located at the top of the windshield. Do not block the sensor or let anything splash on it.

Auto light off

- Activation conditions: To activate this function, set the switch lever to position lights and low beam lights and switch off the vehicle power.
- When the auto light off function is activated, the headlights, position lights, rear fog lights, and high beams turn off in 10 seconds if the driver's door is closed.
- When the function is activated, the headlights and position lights turn off in 10 minutes if the driver's door is open.
- After the lights turn off automatically, if the light status changes, these lights come on in the new status. If the conditions to activate the auto light off function are still met, the function is activated again.
- Disabling the auto light off function: When the vehicle is powered on, the auto light off function is disabled, and the light switch can be operated normally.
- If the auto light off function has turned off the lights and the anti-theft alarm system has been armed, disarming the alarm system makes the lights come on again automatically if the auto light off function is activated. If the driver's door is opened while the power is OFF, the lights will turn off after 10 minutes. If the door is opened and then closed, the lights will turn off after 10 seconds.

Lighting delay

- Headlights after exit:
  - Set the time for "Headlights after Exit" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds). With the lights set to "Auto Lights", "Position Lights" or "Low Beam", when you power off the vehicle, lock four doors and attempt to leave the vehicle, the corresponding lights will continue to light up for 10 seconds (or the set time) to provide coming-home lighting.
- Headlights before enter:
  - Set the time for "Headlights before Enter" on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Courtesy Light** (default: 10 seconds). With the light adjustment switch turned to "Auto Lights", "Position Lights" or "Low Beam", when you unlock the vehicle and attempt to approach it, the corresponding lights will light up for 10 seconds (or the set time) to provide the leaving-home lighting.

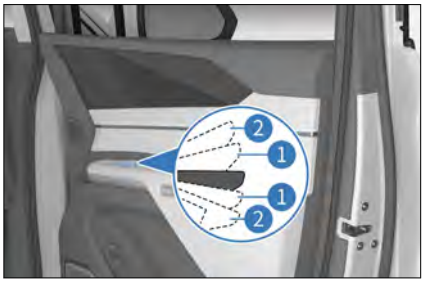
Adjusting headlight height

- To adjust headlight height, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior Light**
- The maximum height is set to 0 by factory default.

Driver's Door Switches

Power Window Switches

- When the ignition is on, all the window switches can roll up or down the window.
  - Press the window switch to roll the window down.
  - Pull up the window switch to roll the window up.



Manual operation

- Press or pull a window switch to position ① and hold to lower or raise the associated window. Release the switch to stop the window where you want it.

Automatic up/down function

- Press or pull a window switch to position ② and release to automatically lower or raise the associated window. During the process, operate the switch in any direction to stop the window midway.

Anti-pinch function

If someone or an object is caught by the window when it is rolling up, the window stops and rolls down a certain distance automatically.

When automatic up or anti-pinch function fails

- Follow the steps below to restore the function.
  - Pull up the window switch to raise the window glass to the top position and hold it there for about two seconds, and then press to lower the window glass to the bottom and hold it there for about two seconds. The automatic up and anti-pinch functions can be recovered.

Delay function

- After the vehicle is powered off, if the front doors are not open, the four window switches has a 10-minute roll-up/down delay period. During this period, the windows can still be rolled up and down. If either of the front doors is opened during this period, the delay function is canceled, and the switches can no longer be used to operate the windows.

WARNING

- Never deliberately activate the anti-pinch function with any part of your body.
- Please follow the precautions below to prevent serious injury or death from window closing:
  - Before operating the power windows, ensure that all passengers do not have any body parts that can be caught in the window.
  - Do not allow a child to operate the power windows.

CAUTION

- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.

CAUTION

- Contacting a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for servicing is recommended if the windows' auto up or anti-pinch function fails.

Central Locking

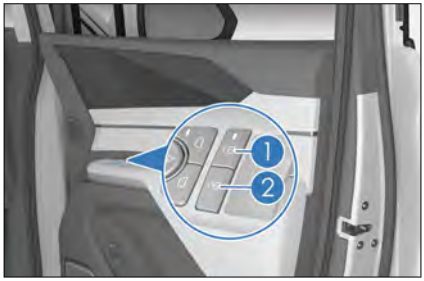
The driver's door is equipped with power door switches. Both switches can lock or unlock all doors.

① Locking

Press the central lock button. All doors are locked and the red lock indicator lights up.

② Unlocking

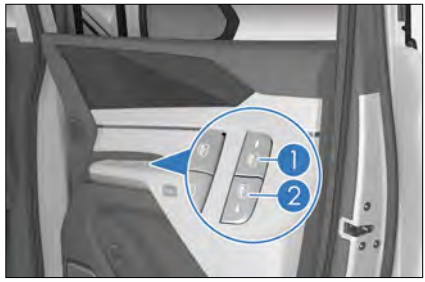
Press the central unlock button. All doors are unlocked and the red lock indicator turns off.



Window Lock Switch

The driver-side door is equipped with window lock switches. Press the buttons to control the window switches of side doors.

- Press the left button ②, and the indicator turns on. The driver-side switches can be used to open/close four windows; the front passenger-side switch can be used to open/close the window; the rear left window switch cannot be used to open/close the window, and the rear right window switch is not limited.
- Press the switch ② a second time. The indicator goes out, and the passenger window switches work normally.

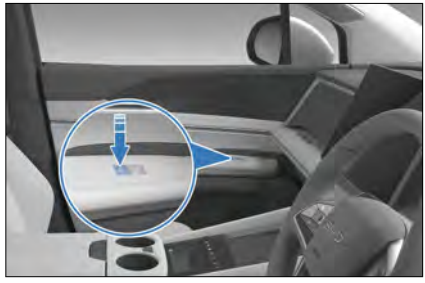


- The operation of the right window lock switch ① is the same as that of the left window.
- Pressing button ① and ② deactivates the passenger window switches, with driver's window switches remain operational.

Passengers' Window Switches

Front Passenger Side Window Control Switch

- When the ignition is on, use the front passenger side window control switch to raise/lower the window glass.



Second Row Passenger Side Window Control Switch

- The second row passenger side window control switch is located on the door panel of the sliding doors on both the left and right sides of the vehicle.
- When the ignition is on, move up/down the control switch on the door panel to raise/lower the window glass.



Automatic Window Closing*

- To enable or disable automatic window closing function, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Locks** → **Windows**.

Automatic window closing upon vehicle locking

- When the "Auto Window Closing After Locking" is enabled, if the ignition is switched off, the driver's door is opened, and the hood, trunk, and all doors are closed, press the lock button on the smart key to raise the four windows.

Automatic window closing on rainy days

- When the function is enabled and the vehicle ignition is on, all windows close automatically if the wiper sensor senses a certain amount of rain.

  The enabled function works only once, and then works again after the vehicle is powered off and restarted.

High-speed automatic window closing

- When the function is enabled and the vehicle exceeds a certain speed, all windows close automatically.

Hazard Warning Light Switch

When the ⚠ button is pressed, all turn signals and turn signal indicators on the instrument cluster start flashing. They all stop flashing when the ⚠ button is pressed again.



Sunroof Switch

Sunroof Switch

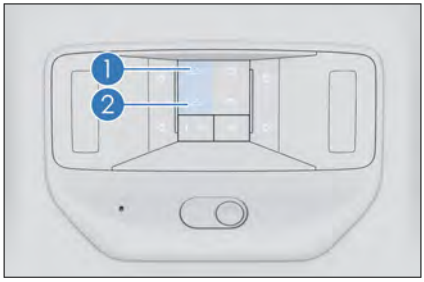
The sunroof can only be operated when the ignition is switched on or when the power-off delay has not expired.

Opening the sunroof

- Touch the button ①, and the sunroof tilts up for ventilation.

Closing the sunroof

- Touch the button ②, and the sunroof is closed automatically.



Anti-pinch Function

- While it is closing, the sunroof reopens for a certain distance if anything trapped is detected.

WARNING

- Keep clear of the sunroof when it is opening or closing. Serious injury may occur when passengers have their body parts caught in the sunroof.
- Passengers must refrain from sticking hands or their heads out through the sunroof. Otherwise, severe injury or even death may occur.

CAUTION

- Water may enter the cabin when operating the sunroof after rainy or snowy weather or after washing the vehicle. Wipe it clean with a dry cloth before operating.
- Trying to open the sunroof at outside temperatures below 0°C or when it is covered in snow or frost may damage the sunroof or its motor.

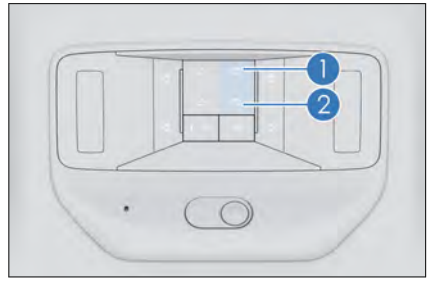
Initialization

- With the ignition on, the signal remains valid and the sunroof is in the uninitialized state, try the following steps for initialization:
- Press the close button to the fully closed position and hold on for at least 5 seconds to initialize the sunroof.
- If the sunroof does not close fully, calibrate manually. Press and hold the sunroof close button, and release it when the sunroof stops moving. Hold the button again for at least five seconds, and release it until the sunroof is fully closed and a click sound is heard.

Sunshade

Opening the sunshade

- Press and hold the sunroof open button ① to open the sunroof. Release the button midway to stop the sunroof.
- Release the button ① immediately after pressing it to open the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop, press button ① or ② midway.



Closing the sunshade

- Press and hold the button ② to close the sunshade and release the button midway to stop it
- If the sunshade has been initialized, releasing the button ② immediately after pressing it closes the sunshade automatically. For the sunshade to stop, press button ① or ② midway.

Anti-pinch function

- If the sunshade closing process is obstructed by anything, it will stop and slightly retract.

Initialization

- With the ignition on, if the signal remains valid and the sunroof is in the uninitialized state, try the following steps for initialization:
  - Press the button to the fully closed position and hold on for at least seven seconds and then release to initialize the sunshade.
  - If the sunshade does not close fully, calibrate manually. Press and hold the sunshade button, and release it when the sunshade stops moving. Hold the button again for at least seven seconds, and release it until the sunshade is fully closed and a click sound is heard.

⚠ CAUTION

- When opening or closing the sunshade, avoid forceful contact with its curtain, to prevent damage.
- Do not intentionally activate the anti-pinch function by jamming any part of your body into the window.
- The anti-pinch function may fail to work if an object is caught right before the sunshade is fully closed.

Sunshade Switch of Panoramic Canopy*

- The sunshade switches are located on the left and right door panels of the sliding doors.

Opening the sunshade

- Pushing up and holding the sunshade opens the sunshade. Releasing the button stops it midway.
- Release the sunshade button immediately after pushing it up to open the sunshade automatically. Pushing up the button again midway to stop the sunshade at its current position.



Closing the sunshade

- Pushing down and holding the sunshade button closes the sunshade. Releasing the button stops it midway.
- If the sunshade has been initialized, briefly pushing up the sunshade button closes the sunshade automatically. Pushing the button again midway to stop the sunshade at its current position.

Anti-pinch function

- If the sunshade closing process is obstructed by anything, it will stop and slightly retract.

Initialization

- With the ignition on, if the signal remains valid and the sunroof is in the uninitialized state, try the following steps for initialization:
  - Press the button to the fully closed position and hold on for at least seven seconds and then release to initialize the sunshade.

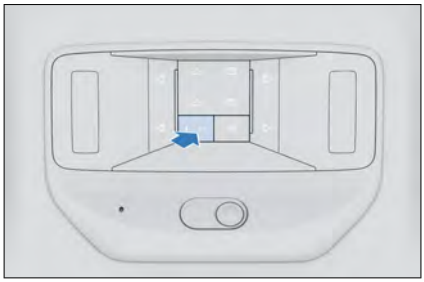
- If the sunshade does not close fully, calibrate manually. Press and hold the sunshade button, and release it when the sunshade stops moving. Hold the button again for at least seven seconds, and release it until the sunshade is fully closed and a click sound is heard.

CAUTION

- When opening or closing the sunroof sunshade, avoid forceful contact with its curtain, to prevent damage.
- Do not intentionally activate the anti-pinch function by jamming any part of your body into the window.
- The anti-pinch feature may not work if an object is jammed into the window when it is almost completely closed.

Emergency Call (E-Call)

SOS button



- E-Call refers to emergency call. Pressing and holding the SOS button for 1-10 seconds triggers the E-Call system manually, and pressing and holding the button for 10-20 seconds does not.
- To cancel an emergency call made by mistake, press the SOS button a second time within five seconds.
- The E-Call system activates automatically in the event of airbag deployment.
- When triggered, the system automatically makes an emergency call and communicates relevant vehicle and accident information to a public safety answering point.

CAUTION

- If pressed and held for over 20 seconds, the SOS button will be considered to be short-circuited (stuck). In that case, E-Call cannot be triggered manually.
- The dialed emergency call cannot be canceled manually. The E-Call system will begin a 60-minute callback period after the call is hung up by the public safety answering point or has not been answered 10 consecutive times.

Status	LED Indicator	Beeping
Ignition off or E-Call system failure	Off	\
Power-on self-check mode	Flashing fast (at 2 Hz)	\

Status	LED Indicator	Beeping
Ignition on and self-check passed	Solid on if self-check is passed	\
E-Call connecting	Flashing (at 1 Hz)	A beep
E-Call connected	Flashing (at 1 Hz)	A beep
E-Call ended	Solid on	Two beeps after E-Call ends
Callback time (60 minutes by default)	Solid on	\

Second-Row Control Panel*

The second-row control panel are located on both sides of the sliding doors, providing independent control of A/C system, ventilated seat, heated seat* and windows. Heated seat controls are subject to actual configuration. Follow the adjustments below according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

① A/C ON/OFF

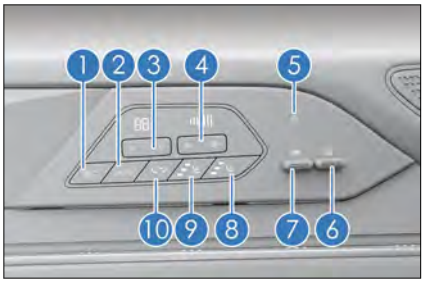
- Press this button to turn rear A/C on or off.

② A/C auto mode

- Press this switch to activate automatic A/C adjustment.

③ A/C temperature control

- Press ◁ to lower the temperature.
- Press ▷ to increase the temperature.



④ Fan speed control

- Press fan speed- button to lower fan speed.
- Press fan speed+ button to increase fan speed.

⑤ A/C locking status indicator (Only lights on when the rear A/C control is locked via front passenger setting.)

⑥ Sunshade control switch (automatic with anti-pinch)

- Press this button to open or close the sunshade.

⑦ Window control button (automatic with anti-pinch)

- Press this button to turn sliding door windows on or off.

⑧ Heated seat*

- Press to adjust seat ventilation*. (See ***P80*** for details.)

⑨ Ventilated seat

- Press this button to adjust seat ventilation. (See ***P80*** for details.)

⑩ Air distribution control

- Press this button to adjust air distribution mode.

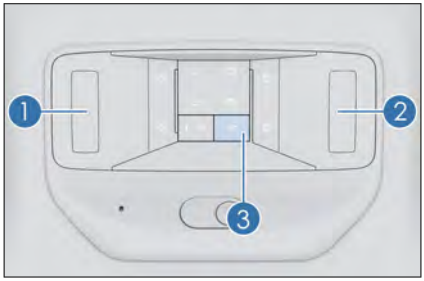
Interior Light Switches

Front Interior Lights

① Front-left Interior light switch

① Front-right Interior light switch

③ Interior light master switch



- Press interior light button to turn on left/right interior light. Press again to turn them off.
- To turn on or off the interior light automatic switch, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.
- When the vehicle is not powered off, "Auto Interior Lights" is enabled, opening any door and touching the interior light will switch the brightness between high and low levels instead of turning the light off.
- When the vehicle is powered off and "Auto Interior Lights" is enabled, the interior lights will automatically turn off after the door has been open for a period of time. Any other operations during this period restart the timer.
- Under non-door-controlled status, press the interior light master switch to turn on the front interior lights and side interior lights. Press again to turn off all interior lights.

Side Interior Lights

- The vehicle is equipped with side interior lights in the middle and rear sections.
- Touch the covers of side interior lights to turn on the lights.



04 USING AND DRIVING

Charging/Discharging..... 106
Batteries..... 122
Operating Tips..... 125
Starting and Driving..... 135
Driver Assistance..... 147

Charging/ Discharging

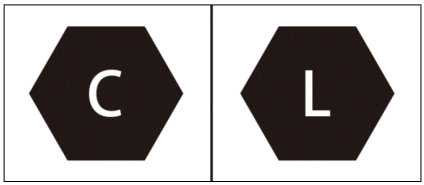
Charging Instructions

Charging Safety Warnings

- The charging connector uses high-voltage current. Minors are prohibited to charge the vehicle or touch the charging equipment. Keep them away from the vehicle during charging.
- Charge the vehicle in a safe environment, and avoid charging in thunderstorms, or areas with hazardous liquids, fire or heat sources, or flammable or explosive items.
  - Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.
- Charging may affect medical or implanted electronic devices. Consult the device manufacturer before charging.
- Before charging:
  - Ensure that the power supply equipment, the charging connector, the charge port, and the charging connection device are free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Do not charge the vehicle when the plug of the charging connector or port, the socket, or metal terminals are loose or damaged by rust or corrosion.
  - When the charging connector, port, power plug, or socket is visibly stained or damp, wipe them with a dry and clean cloth to ensure the connection is dry and clean.
- Use charging equipment that complies with local standards.
  - To avoid charging failure or fire, do not modify, disassemble, or repair the charging equipment and related ports. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider if there is a fault.
  - Do not use charging equipment that does not meet safety standards or has potential safety hazards. Do not allow children to use the charging equipment and keep animals away from the vehicle while charging.
- Ensure that your hands are dry before charging to prevent risk of personal injuries.
- If anything abnormal is found in the vehicle or the charging equipment during charging, stop charging immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Always observe the following charging precautions to prevent damage to the vehicle:
  - Do not shake the charging connector, otherwise the vehicle charge port may be damaged.
  - Do not charge the vehicle in a thunderstorm to prevent risk of lightning strikes.
- Do not open the hood for maintenance while charging.
- After charging, do not disconnect the charging equipment with wet hands or while standing on any wet surface.
  - Before driving, ensure that the charging equipment is disconnected from the charge port.

Compatibility of vehicle and charging infrastructure*

- Compatibility signs are located on the vehicle's charging socket, the local charging infrastructure (charging stations and sockets), and on the charging cable.
- The signs refer to standardized charging systems in accordance with DIN EN 62196.



Charging Precautions

- Although AC and DC charging can be carried out in any power mode, it is safer to power off the vehicle before charging. The vehicle cannot be powered on during charging.
- If power supply resumes after short-time outage of the external power grid, BYD charging equipment will re-start charging automatically and no re-connection of the charging equipment is required.
- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to set early stop for the charger first instead of directly unplugging the charger.
- When the vehicle is to be parked for an extended period, it is recommended to charge it at least once every month.

Precautions for charging equipment

- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle:
  - Before starting the vehicle, check that the charging equipment is disconnected. When the charging connector is loosely inserted, you may still be able to power on the vehicle and drive it. Driving with charging equipment connected will damage the equipment and the vehicle.
  - Do not close the charge port door when the port cap is open.
  - To prevent charging port cover malfunction, do not frequently open and close it. The recommended time interval for opening and closing the port door is at least one second.
  - If the charging port cover or charging gun becomes frozen due to low temperatures, thaw it completely before operation. Do not force open the charging port cover or forcibly withdraw the charging gun.
  - During charging, do not shake the charging connector, otherwise the vehicle charge port may be damaged.
  - Do not force the charging connector in or out while the charge port is locked.
- Handle charging equipment with care:
  - The charging cable has a fixed length. Do not pull or twist the cable forcefully.
  - Prevent the charging equipment from any mechanical impact, such as falling and colliding with other objects.
  - Do not store or use the charging equipment at above 50°C.
  - Do not place the charging equipment near heaters or other heating sources.
- It is not recommended to use any additional wire or adapter/connector.

Before charging

- Do not force the charge port door open when it is locked.
- Make sure that the charging connector and the charge port are free of foreign

objects, and that the protective cap of the charging connector terminal does not get loose or deformed.

- Unlock and open the charge port door. Hold the charging connector, align the connector with the charge port and push it in, making sure that they are properly connected.

During charging

- It is recommended that no one stay in the vehicle during charging.
- The A/C can be used as normal while the vehicle is being charged. However, the charging power may be reduced.
- It is better to park the vehicle in a ventilated area, and do not obstruct the grille.
- It is normal that the charging power displayed on the instrument cluster may fluctuate temporarily as the battery temperature control system is working during charging.
- Battery cooling may start, and the compressor, fan and other components work when necessary. It is normal that there will be some noise under the hood.
- Before charging is complete, battery equalization is activated for longer battery life and thus the charging time may be longer.
- The charging cable must not be placed in a spiral during charging, as this will affect heat dissipation.
- In the case of low-temperature charging, the temperature control system can improve the battery's low-temperature charging capacity, but the charging time is prolonged and the heating power consumption is increased. This is normal.
  - In low-temperature regions, it is recommended to charge the vehicle in a heated indoor space.
  - In high-temperature regions, it is recommended to charge in a cool and ventilated place.
- The estimated time until full charge is displayed on the instrument cluster and may vary slightly across temperatures, SOC, and charging facilities.

After charging

- If you need to stop charging before the battery is fully charged, try to set early stop for the charger first instead of directly unplugging the charger.
- Stop charging first and make sure the charge port is unlocked.
- Hold the charging connector, press the button on the connector, and then pull it out.
- After charging, unlock the port before removing the charging connector.
- Do not force the charging connector out while the charge port is locked, otherwise the charge port may be damaged.
- After unplugging the charging connector, be sure to close the charge port's cap, otherwise water or foreign materials could affect normal use of the port.

Recommendations to enhance vehicle experience:

- When the State of Charge (SOC) bar on the instrument cluster turns red, the high-voltage battery is about to be exhausted. Charge it immediately.
- It is recommended to charge the vehicle immediately after using it for better charging performance.

General Charging Troubleshooting

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
Charger is connected and charge starts, but battery cannot be charged.	The low-voltage battery over-discharges.	Replace the low-voltage battery.
	Charging equipment fails.	If it is verified that the charging equipment's power indicator is working properly, or that there are no other unusual indications, change the charging equipment or contact the charging equipment supplier.
	The high-voltage battery temperature is too low or too high.	Warm up or cool down the high-voltage battery. Keep the vehicle in an environment with appropriate temperature and charge it when the temperature becomes normal.
	The high-voltage battery has been fully charged.	When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the charging will stop automatically.
Charging stops midway.	Charging cable is not connected properly.	Verify that the charging connector* is not loosely connected.
	The button* on the charging connector is pressed.	If the button* on the charging connector is pressed, charging will stop. Connect again to start charging.
	The power is off.	After the power is restored in a period of time, the charging connection should be connected again to start charging.
	High-voltage battery temperature is too high or too low.	Charge the vehicle when the battery temperature returns to a normal level.

Fault	Possible Cause	Solution
	Vehicle or charging pile fails.	If there is any fault prompt for the charging pile or the vehicle, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Vehicle AC Charge/Discharge Indicator*

- The charging/discharging indicator is located in the charge port door on the right side of the vehicle body, and it indicates the charging state in green, yellow, red, blue, and white respectively.
- If the charging/discharging connector is not connected, the indicator remains solid white for a period of time. If the vehicle is locked during use, the indicator is on for a period of time and then turn off. When the vehicle is unlocked, the indicator lights up again.

Function	Vehicle Status	Indicator Status	Color
Lighting	Charge port opened (no connector connected)	Solid white	
Charging	Charge/discharge initialization process	Flashing yellow	
	Charging being scheduled/ charging paused	Solid yellow	
Charging	Charging in progress	Flashing green	
	Charging complete	Solid green	
Dischargin g	Discharging in progress	Flashing blue	
Fault	Charge/Discharge fault	Solid red	

Charging

- Check before charging:
  - Ensure that the power supply equipment is free of defects, such as cable wear, rusted ports, cracked casings, or foreign objects in the ports.
  - Do not charge when the charging connection becomes loose.
  - Make sure the port is clear of fluids or foreign objects, and its metal terminals are not rusty or corroded.
- In any of these cases, do not charge. Otherwise, personal injuries may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Protect the charging equipment against water contact on rainy days.

Using Mode 2 Charging Cable*

Before mode 2 charging

- To prevent serious personal injury, see Charging Safety Warnings in "Charging Instructions" carefully.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, read and observe Charging Precautions in "Charging Instructions".

Equipment

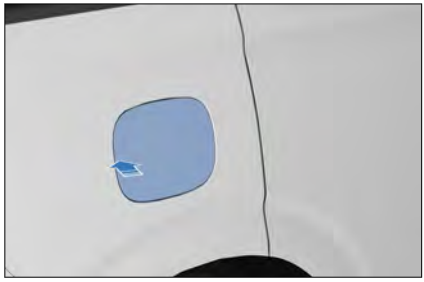
- The AC charging connection device* allows the vehicle to be connected to a household socket that meets local standards for charging.
- This Mode 2 charging cable includes a power plug (complying with local standards), a charging connector, a control box, and a charging cable. The plug should be connected to a standard household power socket, and the charging connector to the vehicle's charge port.
- Use household sockets that meet the local standards to prevent line damage or tripping due to high-power charging, which can affect the normal use of other devices.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- When using Mode 2 Charging Cable, activate the immobilizer system of the charge port.

Charging

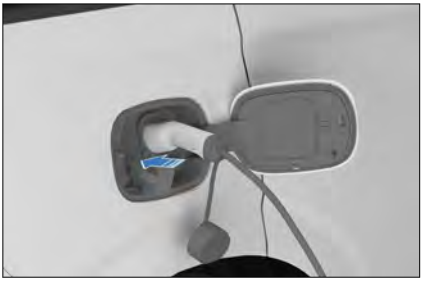
1. Open the charge port door:
   - With the vehicle unlocked, power off the vehicle, and press the charge port door on the right side of the vehicle to open the door.



2. Open the AC charge port cap:
   - Open the charging port cap*, and make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



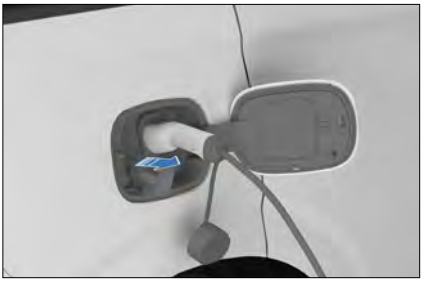
3. Connect to the power supply terminal:
   - Plug the Mode 2 Charging Cable into a household socket and its power indicator comes on and stays solid.
4. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the Mode 2 Charging Cable into the port and make sure it is tight.
   - After the charging connector is inserted, the charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster. The charging indicator of the Mode 2 Charging Cable flashes.



- In the charging process, charging parameters and the charging sign are displayed on the instrument cluster.
  - You can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P115*** for details.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - The charging automatically ends when the vehicle is fully charged.
   - To end the charging early, proceed to the next step.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - If the immobilizer is disabled, press the button on the charging connector and pull it out.
   - If the immobilizer is active, press the unlock button on the key or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby), then press the button on the charging connector to pull it out.



REMINDER

- To unlock the vehicle, press the unlock button on the key (when charging the vehicle with ignition switched off) or press the microswitch on the door handle (when the key is nearby).
- When the immobilizer system is activated, unlock the vehicle to release the charge port immobilizer before pulling out the charging connector. The connector has to be pulled out promptly, or the port will re-lock.
- You can activate the immobilizer on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P121*** for details.
- If the charging connector cannot be removed after unlocking, try a few more unlocking attempts. If that does not work, try emergency unlocking. For the operating procedure, see ***P122*** in "Charging Port Immobilizer System".
- Reservation charging cannot be used when the remaining battery is too low.

3. Disconnect the power plug.
4. Close the charging port cap and the port door.
5. Store the charging equipment properly.

Using AC Charging Piles*

Before using AC charging piles:

- To prevent serious personal injury, see Charging Safety Warnings in "Charging Instructions" carefully.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, read

and observe Charging Precautions in "Charging Instructions".

Equipment

- Single-phase AC charging box*
  - The single-phase AC charging box consists of a charging box, a charging connector, and a connecting cable. For information on circuit breaker and emergency stop switch, see the charging box user manual.
  - Charge with a charging box. For the use of its equipment, refer to its user manual and follow the operating steps.
- Single-phase AC charging pile
  - Charge the vehicle using a public single-phase AC charging pile. Since some charging piles are not equipped with charging connectors, AC charging connectors need to be prepared.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door and port cap:
   - See ***P110*** to unlock the charge port door, open the port door and the charge port cap on the right side of the vehicle.
2. Connect to the power supply terminal:
   - Skip this step if an AC charging box is used for charging.
   - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
   - Use a self-prepared AC charging connector to connect your vehicle to the single-phase AC charging pile with no charging connector.
3. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector into the port and make sure it is tight.
4. Charging settings:
   - Skip this step if an single-phase AC charging box or a public AC charging pile without any setting option is used.
   - For public single-phase AC charging pile/box with settings, swipe the card or scan the QR code. See the user manual for charging pile/box details.
5. The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

REMINDER

- In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.
- You can schedule charging on the infotainment touchscreen. See ***P115*** for function settings.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or charging is complete.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - Unplug the charging connector according to ***P110***.
3. Disconnect the power plug.
   - Skip this step for AC charging piles equipped with charging connectors.
   - If AC charging connector is used, it is recommended to unplug the charging connector from the vehicle first and then the plug from the charging point.
   - Skip this step if an AC charging box is used for charging.
4. Close the AC charge port cap and the port door (see ***P110***).

5. Store the equipment properly.
   - If an AC charging pile/box is used, place the charging connector in its designated location.

WARNING

- Never drop the AC charging connector or pull it directly by its cable. Take caution when moving the equipment. Store the equipment in a cool place after use.

Using DC Charging Piles*

Before using DC charging piles

- To prevent serious personal injury, see Charging Safety Warnings in "Charging Instructions" carefully.
- To prevent damage to the charging equipment and the vehicle, see Charging Precautions in "Charging Instructions" carefully.

Equipment

- Charge the vehicle using a public DC charging pile at a charging station.
- Equipment specifications: Please check the instructions for the charger.
- Charging time: Refer to the charging time message on the instrument cluster.

Charging

1. Open the charge port door:
   - With the vehicle unlocked, try to power off the vehicle, and press the charge port door on the right side of the vehicle to open the door.
2. Open the DC charge port cap:
   - Open the charge port cap, and make sure that no obstacles exist between the head of the charging connector and the end of the charging socket.



3. Connect to the vehicle port:
   - Plug the charging connector of the DC charging piles into the DC charge port and lock it.
4. Start the charging:
   - Operate the charging equipment according to the instructions to start charging.
5. The charging connection indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
   - In the charging process, the instrument cluster displays relevant charging parameters and the charging sign.

Stopping charging

1. End charging:
   - Charging ends automatically when early stop time is due or the charging is complete.
2. Unplug the charging connector:
   - Press the mechanical lock button of the DC charging connector to pull out the connector.
3. Close the charge port cap and the port door.
4. Organize the equipment:
   - After DC charging with a charging pile, organize the charging

equipment and store the charging connector in the designated position properly.

CAUTION

- After charging, if the charging connector cannot be pulled out, contact our customer service immediately.
- In case of high-temperature DC charging, the battery thermal management performance may be affected by the A/C in the passenger compartment, and the charging performance may degrade, resulting in an extended charging time. To ensure charging efficiency, it is recommended to keep the A/C off during charging.

Smart Charging

- You can access the setting screen either through the infotainment system:
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Smart Charging app.
  - On the infotainment touchscreen, tap → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** to go to the Smart Charging screen.
- Exit the Smart Charging screen by tapping the Back or Home button.

Reservation charging settings

① Scheduled charging switch

② Charging start time

③ Repeat cycle

④ Settings



- The factory default setting is to charge the vehicle immediately. That is, scheduled charging is disabled.
- To schedule a charging, toggle the scheduled charging ON ①, set the charging start time ② and repeat cycle ③, then save the settings.
- After the schedule is set up, if you connect the charging connector or press the power button to power off the vehicle, you will be reminded through the infotainment touchscreen of the charging start time. You can switch to instant charging if needed.
- You can tap the smart charging setting icon to turn off the charging connector connected alert and power-off alert.

CAUTION

- The smart charging function is developed for BYD's slow AC charging equipment only. Please disable this function when using slow AC charging equipment that is not certified by BYD. Otherwise, scheduled or immediate charging may fail due to no response from the equipment, resulting in low SOC or even low voltage of the high-voltage battery. If you need to use this function in a public charging facility, make sure it supports reservation from the charging pile.

REMINDER

- The smart charging function is only dedicated for AC charging piles provided by BYD. If you need to use this function via a public charging facility, please make sure that the facility supports vehicle-terminal reservation.
- In the event of low battery, the vehicle is charged to the minimum level before scheduled charging begins. In this process, the infotainment system still gives reminder messages for power-off and charging connector connection, and a related message is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- In a cold environment, the battery preheating function is automatically activated for the reservation driving, and this function can also be used without connecting the charger, but a certain amount of battery power is consumed.
- The instant charging on PAD is effective only for current preset. To cancel all presets, please turn off the preset charging switch on the setting interface.
- The schedule setting is invalid for DC charging. Charging begins immediately after a DC charging connector* is connected.

Discharging Instructions*

- This vehicle is equipped with the vehicle-to-load (V2L) feature.

WARNING

- Do not touch any metal terminal of the discharging socket or the vehicle charge port during discharging.
- Stop discharging immediately if there are any abnormalities such as peculiar smell and smoke.
- See Charging Instructions for discharging safety warnings.
- Store the product in a cool and dry place when it is not in use.
- When discharging, do not place the equipment in the trunk, under the front of the vehicle, or near the tires, to prevent it from getting rolled over by the vehicle, dropped, or trampled on.
- Never use the equipment if the power strip cable becomes soft, if the discharging connector cable is worn out, if the insulation layer is cracked, or if any other damage occurs.
- Never use the equipment when the discharging connector or power strip is disconnected or broken, or when there is any sign of surface damage.

CAUTION

- For precautions concerning use of the discharge connection device, refer to the charging equipment precautions in Charging Precautions.
- Before V2L discharging, ensure that the load is turned off.
- For V2L discharging, the engine starts at low vehicle SOC. Do not discharge in a confined space or

CAUTION

near combustible and explosive materials.

REMINDER

- The V2L function is recommended only when the vehicle SOC is high.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the static power consumption of the vehicle will increase if the V2L connection device is connected for an extended period without any output. Therefore, removing the discharging connector when the device is not used is recommended.

V2L External Discharging*

1. Equipment

- Vehicle-to-load (V2L) equipment*: consists of a Mode 2 Charging Cable converter and a power strip.

2. Discharging

- Before discharging, disarm the anti-theft alarm system.
- Unlock the charge port door, then open the port door and cap.
  - Unlock the charge port door, and then open the port door and cap on the right side of the vehicle (see Using Mode 2 Charging Cable).
- Check before discharging:
  - Ensure the V2L connecting device* casing is not cracked, and its plug is free from rust or obstructions.
  - Ensure that there is no water or foreign material inside the charge port and that metal terminals are not damaged and free from rust or corrosion.
  - In any of these cases, do not discharge. Otherwise, personal injuries may occur due to short circuit or electric shock.
- Connect the discharge connection device*:
  - Insert the Mode 2 Charging Cable plug into the power outlet until a secure connection is achieved.
  - Firmly connect the V2L discharging connector to the charge port.
- Start discharging:
  - After the switch button* on the discharging socket is pressed, the socket indicator stays on (red), indicating that the socket can be used.
  - After the device is connected, discharge begins and discharging information is displayed on the instrument cluster.

3. Setting discharging duration

- After the discharge connector is plugged in, V2L discharging will be automatically toggled on and a countdown to discharging will be displayed on the instrument cluster and infotainment touchscreen. The default duration of a discharge set on the infotainment touchscreen is five hours.
- Go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** to access the "Vehicle To Load" setting screen.
  - After the vehicle is connected to the discharging connector, toggle the "Vehicle To Load" on or off.
  - When the vehicle is discharged to a low SOC with the ignition off, tap the "Start the engine to generate electricity when the power is too

low" switch if it is necessary to start the engine to continue discharging.

REMINDER

- If discharged to a low SOC with the ignition on, the vehicle automatically drives the engine to generate electricity without previous settings.

- Tap the "Settings" button of single discharge time to set the required discharge duration on the corresponding screen.

CAUTION

- If the discharging connector is not connected, discharging does not start. Tap the "Vehicle To Load" button, and it lights up for a while and then turns gray, which is a normal phenomenon.
- Discharging may stop in advance if the vehicle battery is too low, if battery is lower and no gasoline is available to generate electricity, or if the set discharging time is too long. This is a normal phenomenon.

4. Stopping discharging

- Stop discharging:
  - Press the switch on the discharging socket.
  - In an emergency, proceed directly to the next step (which is not recommended).
- Disconnect the discharge connection equipment:
  - Press the mechanical button on the discharging connector and remove the connector from the charge port.
- Close the charge port cap and the port door.
- Organize the equipment:
  - Store the equipment* in the luggage storage box or the net bag after discharging.

Target SOC Setting

- When the vehicle runs in dual-mode condition, the target SOC function is available to save battery power for operations such as rapid acceleration. When the vehicle runs stably, the battery SOC fluctuates around the target SOC.
- The vehicle controller will memorize the last set SOC balance value.

REMINDER

- When the engine has been started and the vehicle is running at a stable speed, part of the torque produced by the engine will drive the generator to generate electricity and charge the high-voltage battery.
- When the SOC deviation from the battery balance point is significant, the balance time may be extended.

Target SOC settings

- Target SOC refers to the battery level that you expect the vehicle to maintain during driving. To set this value, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Manager**.
  - AUTO: fuel economy is prioritized, although battery power keeping is considered.

- SAVE: In the HEV mode, set the mandatory power protection to keep the priority power, and the SOC is as close as possible to the set value.

CAUTION

- Forced power maintenance is only effective in HEV (Hybrid Electric Vehicle) mode. If forced power maintenance is enabled in EV (Electric Vehicle) mode, the function will not be effective. For a better driving experience, it is better to switch to HEV mode before turning SAVE mode on.

- When the destination is convenient for vehicle charging, to make the best use of the electric driving power and reduce the fuel consumption, a lower target SOC is recommended.
- When the destination is not convenient for vehicle charging, a higher target SOC is recommended to improve the driving experience.
- To ensure a comfortable ride, the vehicle automatically adjusts the lower limit of the power balance point based on altitude and ambient temperature.

In-Situ Electricity Generation

- During parking, if the SOC is lower than a certain level, the engine will drive the generator to charge the high-voltage battery. During electricity generation, the engine speed is higher than the normal idle speed, which is normal. The in-situ electricity generation exits when the SOC is higher than a certain value.

Mode Memory

- When the vehicle SOC is high, the vehicle will automatically switch to EV mode when it is powered on. EV mode is recommended to be given priority to.
- When the vehicle SOC is moderate, the vehicle defaults to the previous driving mode when it is powered on. After power-on, you can manually select the mode with the mode switch.

Electricity Generation by Pressing the Accelerator Pedal

- When the vehicle is in Park and HEV mode, if the SOC is lower than a certain value, pressing the accelerator pedal can generate electricity. Controlling the accelerator depth can generate electricity with different power.

REMINDER

- It is recommended not to press the accelerator pedal for a long time to generate electricity.
- In special working conditions, such as low or high temperatures, the power of electricity generated by pressing the accelerator pedal is limited by the charging power or the motor generating capacity, and the power changes on the instrument cluster.

Regenerative Braking Intensity Setting

- During driving, energy is recovered through regenerative braking when the vehicle decelerates. For better efficiency, avoid unnecessary acceleration or deceleration.
- The function can be set in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Energy Management** → **Regenerative Braking**. Select an energy regeneration mode according to your driving habits so that the vehicle delivery optimal regenerative braking experience based on the

chosen mode and actual driving conditions.

  - **Standard**: Requires longer deceleration time and coast distance than the High mode.
  - **High**: Provides maximum energy recovery, resulting in a higher vehicle deceleration.
- Select the intensity based on your deceleration preferences and desired driving experiences.
- The intensity setting is memorized. That is, when the vehicle is started, the system resumes whichever setting it was at the last time the vehicle was turned off.

WARNING

- Regenerative braking cannot replace conventional braking. brake proactively when strong deceleration is required or when driving down steep inclines.
- Do not adjust the regenerative braking intensity while driving at high speeds, Distraction could result in an accident.

CAUTION

- Regenerative braking may be limited when the high-voltage battery is too hot or too cold, or when the SOC is high.

- In HEV mode, the engine automatically starts and stops as needed to charge the battery or provide additional power. In some conditions, the engine may start, or stop if it has started.
- Vehicle power is lower at low battery SOC than that at high battery SOC.

Driving Range Display

- The driving range display mode can be adjusted according to your preference. The default setting is standard mode.
- The corresponding settings are accessible on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Audio&Display** → **Instrument** → **Range Display Mode**.
  - Standard mode: displays the driving range based on the result of comprehensive working condition test.
  - Dynamic mode: displays the estimated driving range based on the available battery power and current average energy consumption.
- The set driving range display mode is memorized by the system.
  - When the vehicle is powered off and then on, the display mode set last time will be maintained.

REMINDER

- When the Dynamic driving range display mode is set:
  - The driving range on a full charge varies, depending on calculations of the energy consumed in your last drive.
  - The driving range actually displayed will be adjusted based on the state of the vehicle's air conditioner, the driving mode (ECO, NORMAL, SPORT, etc.) selected, and the driver's driving habits, so as to match the vehicle's actual driving range.

Charging Port Immobilizer System

- In order to prevent the charging connector from being stolen, the vehicle charge port is anti-theft with the charging port immobilizer system. This function is disabled by default. Go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Energy** → **Charging and Discharging** to enable the charging port immobilizer system.
- When the immobilizer is in Enable or Intelligent mode, unlock the vehicle and unplug the charging connector during charging in the following ways:
  - With the ignition off, press the unlock button on the smart key to unlock.
  - Press the microswitch next to the exterior handle of the driver's door to unlock.
  - Press the central unlock button on the driver's door to unlock.
  - The charging connector unlocks automatically when the vehicle is fully charged (for "intelligent" mode only).

No.	Charging Port Immobilizer System Status	Door Anti-theft Lock Status	Vehicle Fully Charged or Not	Charging Connector Removable or Not
1	Enabled	Locking	/	No
2	Enabled	Enabled	/	Yes
3	Disabled	Locking	/	Yes
4	Disabled	Enabled	/	Yes
5	Intelligent	Locking	The vehicle is fully charged	Yes
			The vehicle is not fully charged	No
6	Intelligent	Enabled	/	Yes

- As shown in the table above, if the vehicle is in state 2/3/4/6, apart from the above-mentioned unlocking operations, you can unlock and pull out the charging connector by pressing its button. However, this may affect the service life of the charge port or charging connector. This is an emergency action that is not recommended to be taken frequently.

REMINDER

- After the charging connector is unlocked, it has to be pulled out promptly, or the port will re-lock after a while.
- After the locked vehicle is fully charged, the charging connector will be automatically unlocked when the immobilizer system of the charge port is disabled. When

REMINDER

this system is enabled or in the intelligent mode, the charging connector must be manually unlocked following the above steps.

- To ensure the normal driving after charging, close the charge port door after pulling out the charging connector.

Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port

When the charging connector cannot be unplugged due to failure of the immobilizer system, unlock the charge port and unplug the connector.

- The emergency unlocking is located on the right side of the trunk. Slightly pull the emergency rope to unlock the charging connector.
- Reset the emergency cable latch after the unlocking is complete.



REMINDER

- In the event of abnormality or function failure, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Batteries

High-Voltage Battery

- One of the main power sources of the vehicle is high-voltage battery, which is located under the vehicle floor and can be charged repeatedly. The main ways to charge the high-voltage battery through an external power supply are: Using mode 2 charging cable, using AC charging piles, using DC charging piles*, and using motor when the vehicle is braking, coasting, or the engine is on.

CAUTION

- As the high-voltage battery is arranged at the bottom of the vehicle, careful driving is recommended in case of bumpy roads.

REMINDER

- When the ignition is switched on, the high-voltage lines will be connected.
- For new vehicles with normal high-voltage battery status, the pure electric mileage will change due to different driving habits, road conditions, temperatures, and whether the electrical equipment is turned on or off.
- To prolong the battery life and ensure the battery safety, the vehicle switches to trickle charging mode at high SOC, and the charging time may be prolonged.
- Due to the chemical characteristics of the battery itself, the battery capacity of vehicles

REMINDER

that have been used for a period of time has natural degradation, and their pure electric mileage will reduce. It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for vehicle checks. The store-side inspection can confirm whether the reduction of pure electric mileage is normal.

High-Voltage Battery Maintenance

- For optimal battery performance, use a charging connector to fully charge the battery regularly, and the recommended frequency is once a week at least.
- If the vehicle is going to be idle for over seven days, it is recommended to keep the SOC between 40% and 60% to extend vehicle service life. If the vehicle is going to be idle for over three months, charge the battery fully and discharge it down to 40% to 60% SOC, to avoid battery degradation or even damage.

Low-Temperature Heating for High-Voltage Battery

- When the outside temperature is low, the high-voltage battery heating system will be activated and heat up the battery to improve the low-temperature charging speed and ensure the vehicle power and driving range.

WARNING

- Unauthorized personnel must not open the battery pack. Do not disassemble or dismantle the low-voltage battery. Any organization or individual to do so shall bear the responsibility for environmental pollution or accidents.

CAUTION

- If the high-voltage battery fails, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

REMINDER

- The high-voltage battery operates within an optimal temperature range of -20°C to 40°C. Charging time may be extended when the high-voltage battery temperature is outside this range.
- To ensure long term performance, avoid continuously exposing the vehicle to high temperatures or extreme cold environment for over 24 hours.

Recycling the High-Voltage Battery

How to scrap an NEV:

1. Take the vehicle to the BYD recycling service provider that will assess the residual value of the high-voltage battery.
2. Take the assessed vehicle to the recycling organization to disassemble the high-voltage battery.
3. Take the battery to the recycling service provider which will buy back the battery.

WARNING

- New energy car owners have the responsibility and obligation to hand over waste high-voltage batteries to the recycling service outlet. Anyone who hands over a used high-voltage battery to any other organization or individual, or removes/disassembles a high-voltage battery without authorization, shall be liable for any environmental pollution or safety incident so caused.

Low-Voltage Battery

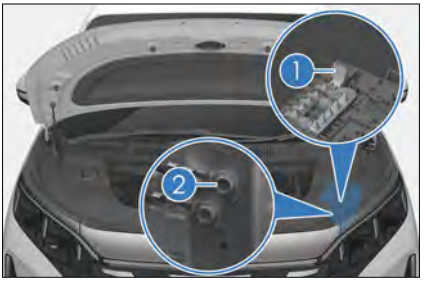
- The low-voltage battery features the intelligent charging function. When the high-voltage battery is fully charged, the vehicle can automatically initiate the high-voltage battery to charge the low-voltage battery, extending its lifespan.

REMINDER

- It is normal that intelligent charging with the ignition "OFF" produces a sound which is heard when the ignition is switched on.
- When leaving the vehicle, make sure all electrical equipment is turned off and the doors are closed.

Waking up the Vehicle from Low SOC

- **Wake-up using the driver's door microswitch**
  - The low-voltage battery features the dormancy wakeup function. The low-voltage battery may enter a dormant state after long-term parking. In that case, the vehicle cannot be remotely located or unlocked with the smart key. At this time, press the microswitch on the driver's door handle (See ***P60***) to activate the low-voltage battery. After the vehicle is unlocked, it can be operated normally.
- **Wake-up by jump start**
  - When the vehicle cannot be woken up and unlocked by the driver's door microswitch, use the mechanical key to open the door. Then, use a 12V power supply and two jump-start cables to start the vehicle. In this case, the low-voltage battery SOC is low. The instrument cluster may display "The low-voltage battery SOC is low, and the vehicle is going to be powered off", and the vehicle will become dormant again. Start the vehicle immediately and keep it started for over 15 minutes to ensure that the low-voltage battery is fully charged.
- Jump starting can only be performed through the dedicated interface of the under-hood PDB. The connection terminals are shown in the illustration.
  - Positive terminal ①
  - Negative terminal ②



- If the vehicle cannot be woken up and started following the above steps, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- Never jump start another vehicle with this vehicle, because this may damage your low-voltage battery.
- The low-voltage battery contains an intelligent control module. To prevent battery damage, do not disassemble or damage this battery without permission, except in an emergency.

CAUTION

- It is recommended that jump starting be performed under professional guidance due to the limited operating space and electrical risks in the under-hood PDB area.
- Use a 12–14.2 V jump-starting power supply and limit each jump-starting attempt to one minute.
- Do not clean the low-voltage battery with liquids, and take caution to prevent liquid ingress.

Intelligent Charging

- When the low-voltage battery is low on charge, the intelligent charging function is triggered to extend its runtime.
- When the high-voltage battery is low on charge, the vehicle may start the engine to generate power to meet the needs of the intelligent charging function.
- This model is provided with the intelligent charging function. It is not necessary to disconnect the low-voltage battery's negative terminal when the vehicle is to be parked for a long period.

REMINDER

- When the low-voltage battery power is low, the intelligent charging will be activated, resulting in the decrease of high-voltage battery SOC or pure-electric driving range displayed on the instrument cluster, which is a normal phenomenon.
- After locking the vehicle, if the high-voltage battery charge level drops to the point of triggering the engine to generate power, it will consume a small amount of fuel and emit a little exhaust.

Operating Tips

Break-in Period

- If the powertrain is hard to start or frequently stops turning, inspect the vehicle immediately.
- If the powertrain makes any abnormal sounds, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- If the powertrain has severe coolant and oil leakage, stop the vehicle for inspection.
- The powertrain needs break-in. This should preferably be done within the first 2,000 km in HEV-economy mode. Steady driving instead of high-speed driving is recommended. The following practices effectively prolong vehicle service life:
  - Avoid flooring the accelerator pedal when starting and driving the vehicle.
  - Avoid speeding.

- Avoid emergency braking within the first 300 km.
- Do not maintain a high or low speed for too long.
- During the break-in period, the proportion of HEV mode (with the engine involved in working) must not be less than 50% of the driving mileage.

Trailer Towing

- The vehicle can tow a trailer only when equipped with towing function.
- Do not make non-approved modifications. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to install the towing kit and related software updates. BYD does not assume any responsibility for injuries or damage caused by non-approved modifications.
- The towing capacity depends on various factors such as vehicle specifications, loads, road conditions, and trailer specifications. The total towing weight must not exceed the limits below:

Item	Parameter (kg)	Note
Maximum towing capacity (braked)	1500	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is braked
Maximum towing capacity (unbraked)	750	Maximum towing capacity when the trailer is unbraked
Maximum vertical load	150	Maximum vertical load on ball joint

1. The maximum towing capacity equals the total trailer weight, which includes all cargo and additional equipment.

2. Maximum vertical load refers to the downward pressure exerted by the weight of the trailer on the trailer hitch when the vehicle and the trailer are stationary.

- To tow a trailer, adjust the tire pressure to accommodate additional loads. Keep front tires inflated to 290 kPa and rear tires to 310 kPa.
- Observe applicable local laws and regulations regarding towing. For driving safety, avoid speeding and overloading.
- For towing, the technically permissible maximum mass on the rear axle may be exceeded by no more than 15% and the technically permissible laden mass of the vehicle may be exceeded by no more than 100 kg. In these instances, the vehicle speed must not exceed 100 km/h and the rear tire pressure must be at least 20 kPa above the tire pressure recommended for normal use.
- Towing other vehicles will have an adverse impact on the vehicle, including maneuverability, performance, braking, endurance, economic driving or power consumption.
- BYD does not assume any responsibility for damage or injuries resulting from towing a trailer due to failure to comply with the proper guidelines. Damage caused by towing a trailer is not covered by the warranty.

- For detailed towing instructions, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The tow bar is for towing trailers only. Do not use it to get unstuck or tow trapped vehicles to prevent vehicle damage and even personal injuries.

Driving Safety Precautions

No Drunk Driving

Even a small amount of alcohol can reduce a driver's ability to respond to traffic condition changes. The higher the level of alcohol, the less responsive the driver will be. Therefore, never drive while under the influence.

No Speeding

Speeding is a major cause of fatal accidents. Faster speeds generally entail higher risk. Therefore, maintain a speed safe for the road traffic conditions.

Keeping the Vehicle Safe for Driving

Tire bursts and mechanical faults are extremely dangerous. To reduce the possibility of such faults, frequently check the vehicle's condition, and regularly complete the specified inspections.

WARNING

- Any driver must possess a driver's license before driving a vehicle.
- Do not drive when fatigued.
- Always follow the traffic regulations when driving a vehicle.

WARNING

- During driving, please focus on driving, and avoid activity unrelated to driving (such as making / receiving phone calls and adjusting buttons).

Vehicle Use Suggestions

Suggestions for prolonging the high-voltage battery usage:

- When the vehicle is not to be operated for over seven days, it is recommended that the battery SOC should be kept at 40%-60%, or the high-voltage battery service life may be reduced.
- When the vehicle is not to be operated for over 3 months, the high-voltage battery must be fully charged and then discharged to 40%–60% every three months. Failure to do so may result in over-discharge, which may lead to reduced battery performance or even damage. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused will not be warranted.
- During operation of the vehicle, if the SOC indicator bar on the instrument cluster enters the red alert area, it indicates that the battery SOC is low. In this case, charge the vehicle in time and avoid driving with low SOC for a long time.
- During operation of the vehicle, it is recommended to use the on-board charging equipment to fully charge the vehicle once every one to two weeks.
- When the temperature is high, avoid long-term storage of vehicles at full power. It is recommended that the vehicle be discharged to below 95% after it is fully charged.
- When the temperature is very low or very high, it is recommended that the

vehicle should not be parked outdoors for a long time.

- During operation of the vehicle, avoid repeated rapid acceleration or deceleration whenever possible.
- During operation of the vehicle, avoid driving the vehicle continuously for a long time; otherwise, the excessively high battery temperature will affect vehicle performance.
- If a fault indication is displayed on the instrument cluster during driving, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection as soon as possible.
- When the high-voltage battery temperature is high, the vehicle performance will be limited to some extent. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait until the temperature drops before operating.

WARNING

- Compared with under normal temperatures, the pure-electric driving range is somewhat reduced and power performance will also be affected in low or high temperature environments.

CAUTION

- If the pure-electric driving range drops to 0 on the instrument cluster, the battery must be charged. If it is not charged within seven days, the battery will suffer permanent damage. Such damage is not covered by BYD warranty terms.
- Driving range depends on many factors, such as the vehicle's available power, vehicle age (current battery life), weather, temperature, road conditions and driving habits.

CAUTION

Fuel

Fuel Selection

- The use of correct fuel is the basis for realizing the best performance of the engine, and also the key to controlling emissions and protecting relevant components.
- For fuel type, refer to ***P265*** attached on the inner side of the fuel door.

CAUTION

- Do not use leaded gasoline. The use of leaded gasoline leads to the failure of the three-way catalytic converter and the malfunction of the control device for exhaust pollution, as well as the increase in maintenance costs.
- The engine damage or excessive emission caused by the use of improper fuel is not covered by the warranty.
- The use of low-grade or inferior gasoline reduces the service life of the engine.

Refueling

1. The fuel door is located on the left side of the vehicle, so park the vehicle with its left side close to the fuel pump.
- Turn the vehicle off.



2. Press the fuel button, and the instrument will indicate that it is relieving pressure. Wait for 2 seconds, and the instrument will then prompt you to fuel up. Press the fuel filler flap, and it will automatically open to a certain angle.



REMINDER

- Pressing the fuel filler flap on the left side of the vehicle directly will not open it. Please press the fuel button first.

3. Open the fuel door, and rotate the fuel tank cap counterclockwise to remove it. Due to the release of pressure in the fuel tank, you may hear a hissing sound.

- Connect the fuel tank cap to the vehicle body panel with a cord to prevent inadvertent loss of the cap. While refueling, place the fuel tank cap on the bracket of the fuel door.



4. After refueling, screw up the fuel tank cap clockwise and then close the fuel door.

5. If the fuel filler cap has been open for an extended period without any operation, please close the fuel filler cap, press the fueling button, and then proceed with the fueling process starting from step 2.

WARNING

- Since the fuel is flammable and combustible, pay attention to the following matters during refueling:
  - It is recommended to add fuel outdoors.
  - Do not smoke during fuel filling, so as to prevent sparks or open flames, which are easy to cause combustion.
  - Fuel filling and charging must be done separately. Do not refuel the vehicle with the charging connector connected, which should be keep a safe distance away from combustible products, or it may result in risk of damaged equipment or injuries when the operation of plugging/unplugging the charging connector is not done by rule, such as burning fuel.

⚠ CAUTION

- Stop filling after the filler nozzle is automatically cut off. Do not overfill the fuel tank, so as to leave some space for fuel expansion due to the temperature change.
- Check whether the fuel tank cap is tightened and whether the fuel tank cap and fuel door are closed after refueling.
- If the fuel tank cap is not securely closed, will display on the instrument.
- If the fuel adding is not completed within 15 minutes after the fuel door is opened, please close the door, open it, and add fuel again, otherwise the reverse spray of oil may occur during refueling.

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life

- Improving fuel economy contributes to extending the vehicle' s service life. Here are some tips for saving fuel and repair costs:
  - Constant speeds save fuel. Sudden acceleration, sharp turns and emergency braking increase consumption.
  - Keep a constant speed according to traffic conditions. Each deceleration or acceleration of the vehicle consumes additional fuel.
  - Using cruise control under proper driving conditions for fuel saving.
  - The use of the A/C brings additional load to the engine, resulting in larger fuel consumption. Turn off the A/C when it is not needed to help reduce fuel usage. When outside temperatures are moderate, use fresh air mode for ventilation.
  - Make sure tire pressure is correct. Insufficient tire pressure causes tire wear and fuel waste.
  - Do not load unnecessary weight on the vehicle. Excessive weight brings additional load to the engine, resulting in large fuel consumption.
  - Do not stop to warm up the engine, and start driving slowly immediately after starting, which can make the engine reach the working temperature as soon as possible and reduce the emission of harmful substances. Unless in extreme low temperature environment, you can keep a high idle speed by lightly stepping on the accelerator pedal when the vehicle is in Neutral under "HEVSPORT" mode, and then start driving slowly after warming up.
  - When the engine is cold, do not run at a high speed or drive with the accelerator pedal pressed to a deep position immediately after starting. It is recommended to drive slowly after starting.
  - Avoid long-term idling of the engine. If you are in a low-traffic area and have to wait for a long time, it is better to turn off the engine and start it later.
  - Avoid engine deceleration or overspeed with loads. Select the appropriate speed gear according to the road conditions.
  - Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Frequent stop and start cause fuel waste.
  - Avoid unnecessary parking or braking. Maintain a stable speed and observe traffic lights to minimize the number of stops. When driving on

the road without traffic lights, keep a proper driving distance from the vehicle ahead to avoid emergency braking, which may also reduce the brake wear.

- Do not drive on roads with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as possible.
- Do not always put your foot on the brake pedal when driving the vehicle, this may cause premature wear, overheating, and consumption of a large amount of fuel.
- Keep moderate speeds in motorways. Higher vehicle speed consumes more fuel. Maintaining vehicle speed within the economical speed range can save fuel.
- Keep front wheels properly aligned, Avoid collision with curbstones and drive slowly on rough roads. An inaccurate front wheel alignment causes excessive tire wear and increases the engine load and fuel consumption.
- Keep the bottom of the vehicle clean and mud free. This reduces vehicle weight and prevents corrosion.
- Adjust the vehicle to keep it at its best working status. Such conditions as dirty air filters, much carbon deposit in spark plugs, dirty, deteriorated or viscous engine oil and lubricating oil, and unadjusted brakes worsen the engine performance and waste fuel. Regular maintenance must be carried out to ensure a long service life of all components and reduce operating costs. If the vehicle is often driven under severe conditions, the maintenance interval shall be shortened.

REMINDER

- Do not coast in Neutral gear.

Carrying Luggage

- This vehicle has multiple storage spaces.
- Use the glove box, interior panel and backrest pockets to place small items. Large items are to be placed in the trunk.
- Overloading or improper accommodation may affect maneuverability, stability and normal operation of the vehicle, and reduce its safety.
- Make sure the vehicle's total load (vehicle + passengers + luggage) remains within the specified maximum weight.
- Please read the following information carefully before carrying luggage.

WARNING

- Overloading and improper accommodation may affect stability and vehicle control, which may lead to accidents.
- Observe the maximum weight limit and other loading guidelines in this manual.
- Do not carry highly magnetic items, as they might interfere in the vehicle's normal operations.

Carrying Items in the Passenger Area

- All items that could be thrown inwards and thus injure occupants in case of a collision must be properly placed and secured.

- Ensure that items placed on the floor behind the front seat do not roll under the seat, so as to avoid affecting the driver's ability to control the pedals or normal seat adjustment. Do not stack items to a height taller than the front seats' seat backs.
- Make sure the glove box is always closed while driving. If the glove box is open, the occupant's knees may be injured in case of a collision or an emergency stop.

WARNING

- Do not pile up toys in the vehicle, as this may affect driving safety and present a hazard to the children, especially in case of emergency braking or collision.

Carry luggage in the trunk.

- Place luggage evenly in the trunk. Put heavier items at the bottom and as far in as possible.
- Secure items with ropes or straps so that they will not move while driving. Do not stack items to a height taller than seatbacks.

Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning

- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO). If the vehicle is properly maintained, CO will not enter the cabin during normal driving.
- Check the exhaust system for leaks under the following conditions:
  - The exhaust sound is abnormal.
  - The vehicle has been involved in an accident that may have damaged the underside.

WARNING

- Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Inhalation may cause loss of consciousness and can be life-threatening. Avoid enclosed spaces or activities that may lead to CO poisoning.
- High concentrations of CO can accumulate rapidly in enclosed areas, such as a garage. Do not start the engine with the garage door closed. Even if the garage door is open, run the engine only as long as necessary to move the vehicle out of the garage.
- When the trunk lid is open, exhaust gases may be drawn into the cabin, creating a hazardous condition. If the vehicle must be operated with the trunk lid open, open all windows and set the climate control system as follows:
  - Select "fresh air" mode.
  - Select "face-level" or "foot-level airflow mode"
  - Set the fan speed to "High".

Wading into Water

- Check water depth - it must not exceed the vehicle's lower edge - before driving into flooded areas.
- If crossing a flooded area is necessary, turn off the air conditioner, slow down, and press the accelerator pedal gently. Keep your foot on the pedal until you cross over, or the exhaust back pressure will suck water into the engine, causing serious damage.



- Never stop and reverse the vehicle, or turn off the engine in flooded areas.
- After crossing over, press the brake pedal several times to dry out the disks and recover brake performance.
- Be careful when driving through deep water, as brakes may get wet.

WARNING

- Drive carefully to avoid accident when there is any water or slurry on the brake disc surface, as this may increase the brake response time thus extending the braking distance.
- Avoid emergency braking as far as possible after driving through any waterlogged road section.
- No water ingress into the engine is allowed. If the vehicle drives on the waterlogged road. prevent water from entering the engine, otherwise the engine will be damaged seriously. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused is not covered by the vehicle's warranty.
- After the vehicle is driven through waterlogged road sections, vehicle components, such as drive system, driving system and automotive electric system, may also be damaged seriously. Any vehicle fault or damage so caused will not be covered by the quality warranty.
- Be sure to find a sheltered place when charging the vehicle on rainy days. If the vehicle is immersed in water or wades through water over the doorsill, which may cause water ingress in high-voltage components, promptly contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for testing and troubleshooting.
- Do not drive the vehicle on the road where the depth of accumulated water exceeds half of the tires.

Influence of water ingress in high-voltage components:

- Water getting into high-voltage components, which are electronic devices, may not be fully dried out by any means.
- Water ingress seriously compromises insulation of high-voltage components, and conductive substances in water may lead to short circuit of high-voltage components or such risk in the entire high-voltage system. This significantly affects the safety and service performance of the vehicle.
- Water in high-voltage components reduces ingress protection rating and voltage withstanding performance, posing a high safety risk.

Fire Prevention

To prevent vehicle fires in a timely and effective manner, pay attention to the following during use of the vehicle:

- Do not press the accelerator pedal continuously. Otherwise, the engine will always run at a high speed.
- No flammable or explosive items are allowed in the vehicle.
  - Temperatures may reach over 70°C in a vehicle exposed to direct sunlight in summer. Therefore, flammable and explosive items, such as lighters, cleaning agents and perfumes, stored in the vehicle can cause a fire or even explosion easily.
- Make sure cigarettes are thoroughly put out.
  - Smoking is not only harmful to your health, but can also may cause a fire. Cigarettes that not thoroughly put out may cause a fire.
- It is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for regular vehicle checks.
  - Check oil leakage in the engine compartment regularly, and clean up the oil dirt and oil stain on the engine in time.
  - Check vehicle wiring, electrical connections, wiring harnesses, insulation, and fixed positions regularly. Deal with identified problems promptly.
- Do not refit vehicle wiring or add any unauthorized electrical appliance.
  - The addition of extra electrical appliances, such as high-power audio systems, light fixtures, etc., may overload and overheat the wiring harness and increase the risk of fire. Improper refitting of electrical appliances or wiring may cause a fire due to contact resistance and abnormal heating.
  - Fuses or other replacement wires in excess of relevant electrical rating are strictly prohibited.
- Select a proper parking location.
  - When the vehicle is parked, especially in summer, do check whether there are any flammables such as dry grasses, dead woods, leaves or wheat straws under the vehicle. If any, a fire may be caused as the temperature of the three-way catalytic converter rises after a longterm drive.
  - When the vehicle is running, avoid driving on the road sections piled up with flammables such as dry leaves, wheat straws and grasses, or immediately stop the vehicle to check whether any flammables are carried along after passing such road sections. When parking the vehicle, try to avoid sun exposure.
- Disconnect the negative cable of the low-voltage battery when the vehicle is being serviced or repaired.
- Keep a lightweight fire extinguisher in the vehicle and know how to use it.
  - In order to ensure vehicle safety, a fire extinguisher should be equipped in the vehicle, and be checked and replaced regularly. Also, you should familiarize yourself with use of the fire extinguisher and be prepared for any accidents.
- In the event of a fire in the vehicle, take effective measures in a timely and calm manner to minimize any losses.
  - Fires typically show initial warning signs, such as abnormal noises and odors in the vehicle body. When abnormal conditions are found, turn off and stop the vehicle immediately. Try to put out the fire if possible.
  - Call a fire emergency number and then contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and your insurance provider.

- Look for the ignition point. If the front compartment is smoking, do not open the hood immediately. (Doing so will let a large amount of air in and cause fire spreading. There is limited comburent in the front compartment. Keeping the hood closed controls the fire so that the fire can be put out more easily.) Point the on-board fire extinguisher at the ignition point from the hood gap to put the fire out, or seek help from the passing cars. If you can borrow more fire extinguishers, open the hood to put it out when you cannot see any flame from outside.
- If the fire brigade is involved, ask for a duty performance certificate and a description of fire cause.
- After occurrence of the accident, contact the insurance company for post-event handling in a timely manner.

REMINDER

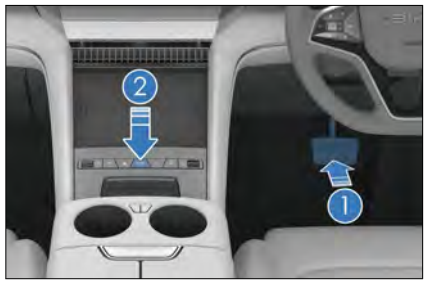
- In order to mitigate losses in the event of an accident, the purchase of fire loss insurance is recommended.

Starting and Driving

Starting the Vehicle

Starting the vehicle in normal cases:

- While carrying a valid smart key, press the brake pedal ① and the START/STOP button ② at the same time. When the OK indicator lights up on the instrument cluster, it indicates that the vehicle is ready for driving.
- Shift to Drive or Reverse, and then the electronic parking brake will be released automatically. Do not start driving the vehicle until hearing a motor release sound from the electronic parking brake system.



Situations when the vehicle cannot power on

- The vehicle cannot power on in the following situations:
  - After you press the START/STOP button, if the smart key warning light turns on, a beep sounds, and the message "No key detected" is displayed on the instrument cluster, the key may not be in the vehicle or cannot be detected due to interference.
  - The key is somewhere unsuitable for detection, such as on the floor, in the cup holder, trunk, or storage compartment.

Starting the vehicle in emergencies

- Engage the parking brake firmly.
- Turn off all unnecessary lights and accessories.
- The vehicle is in Park.
- Switch the ignition off.
- The electronic smart key is in the vehicle.
- Press and hold the START/STOP button for more than 15 seconds to start the vehicle.

WARNING

- Do not touch the START/STOP button while driving.

Auto Power On/Off

- Enable or disable auto power on/off in power supply screen on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Comfort Driving**.
- When auto power on is enabled, power on the vehicle in either of the following ways:
  - Method 1: Unlock with a valid smart key, microswitch, NFC digital key*, Bluetooth* or BYD App*, and then open the driver's door for the first time.
  - Method 2: Carry a valid smart key, NFC digital key*, Bluetooth* or BYD App*, and press the brake pedal. The vehicle is ready to drive.
- When auto power off is enabled, power off the vehicle in either of the following ways:
  - Method 1: Press the START/STOP button.
  - Method 2: Shift to Park, and lock from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch or NFC digital key*.

REMINDER

- Auto power on is operational only when the driver's door is opened for the first time after unlocking.
- Opening the driver's door after another cannot not power on the vehicle.
- When auto power on is disabled, the brake pedal and the START/STOP button must be pressed to power on the vehicle.

REMINDER

- Auto power on is not operational when the hood is open.
- To prevent false triggering, Bluetooth and BYD App can only lock but not power off the vehicle.
- In the case of auto power on by opening the driver's door, locking from the outside with a valid smart key, microswitch, or NFC key* automatically powers off the vehicle. There is no need to press the START/STOP button.

Driving

Safety Check before Driving

It is advisable to carry out a safety check before driving a long distance, which ensures your driving safety and enhances your driving experience. The vehicle can also be taken to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection.

Exterior

- Tires: Check tire pressure and carefully inspect tires for any cut, damage, foreign material, anomaly, and excessive wear.
- Lug nuts: Ensure all nuts are fitted and tightened.
- Leaks: After the vehicle has been stationary for some time, check for fluid deposits beneath it. These may indicate a leak of fuel, engine oil, coolant or other liquids. (It is, however, normal for a small pool of water to form, caused by the air conditioning system.)
- Lighting: Make sure headlights, position lights, turn signals and all other lights are working normally. Check headlight intensity.

Interior

- Seat belts: Check whether seat belts can be properly fastened. Verify that seat belts are not worn or scratched.
- Instrument cluster: Particularly, verify that maintenance indicator, instrument cluster lighting, and defroster work properly.
- Brake pedal: Verify that there is enough space for the brake pedal to work.
- Low-voltage battery and cables: Check connectors for any corrosion or looseness and any cracks in the low-voltage battery housing.

In the engine compartment

- Spare fuses: Verify that spare fuses of all rated charges in the fuse box are available.
- Coolant level: Verify that coolant level is correct.
- Fuel pipe: Check the pipe for any fuel leakage and loose connections.

Check after starting

- Exhaust system: Check the exhaust system for leakage. In case any anomaly is found, have it repaired.
- Engine oil level: After the engine is warmed up, stop it for 10 minutes, park the vehicle on the flat ground, and check the oil level.
- Instrument cluster: Confirm that the maintenance indicator and the speedometer work normally.
- Brakes: In a safe area, drive the vehicle straight, hold the steering wheel tightly, decelerate and apply the brake. Verify that the vehicle maintains a straight direction.
- Other abnormalities: Check for loose parts, leaks, and unusual noises.

If everything is OK, just enjoy your driving.

Preparations before Driving

- Check the surroundings before getting into the vehicle.
- Adjust seat position, seatback angle, cushion height, headrest height, and the steering wheel angle and height.
- Adjust interior rearview mirror and side mirrors.
- Close all doors.
- Fasten the seat belts.

Kick-Down Function*

- While driving, when the vehicle is climbing a hill or needs to accelerate quickly, press the accelerator pedal to near its end. As the pedal resistance increases, the Kick-Down function is triggered, causing the engine RPM to rise and providing greater power to the vehicle.
- The higher the battery charge, the more powerful the battery discharge, and the engine will operate normally, providing a better acceleration experience.
- Faults of the battery, generator or engine affect Kick-Down power output.
- Frequent triggering of the Kick-Down function will cause the battery level of the vehicle to drop rapidly.

Fuel-Efficient Driving

Fuel consumption and driving range are influenced by various factors. Adopt eco-driving practices and perform regular maintenance help enhance driving range, reduce fuel consumption, and contribute to environmental protection.

- Maintain economic mode driving where possible.
- Keep the vehicle in good condition.
  - Perform regular maintenance: Regular maintenance of the vehicle can ensure a longer lifespan and optimal economy for the vehicle.
  - Regularly check tire pressure: Check the tire pressure at least twice a month and before long trips. Adjust the tire pressure as necessary. Low tire pressure increases rolling resistance, which can increase both power consumption and fuel consumption, and accelerate tire wear.
- Use the economic speed as much as possible:
  - Maintaining the economic speed can effectively improve driving range and reduce fuel consumption. Excessively high or low speeds are not beneficial for fuel efficiency. Under safe conditions, try to keep your vehicle at the economic speed.
- Predictive driving:
  - Ensure driving safety;
  - Avoid unnecessary sudden acceleration and braking;
  - Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead;
  - When approaching a red light, release the accelerator pedal to allow the vehicle to coast to a stop.
  - Keep a steady speed.
- Use the energy recovery system properly
  - Under safe driving conditions, select an appropriate braking intensity based on different road conditions to match the vehicle's driving state. To fully utilize the energy recovery system, please apply gentle braking to decelerate and avoid abrupt stops.
- Reduce unnecessary in-vehicle items:
  - Additional weight increases energy consumption.
- Use the air conditioning system properly
  - The heating and cooling processes are highly energy-intensive, significantly reducing driving range and increasing fuel consumption. Reasonable use of the air conditioning system can effectively reduce both electricity and fuel consumption.
- Turn off unnecessary features:
  - Interior heating consumes a huge amount of electrical energy (e.g. seat heating* etc.) and should be switched off when not required.

REMINDER

- During the break-in period, do not drive the vehicle under heavy loads or at a speed that exceeds the maximum allowed speed.
- It is recommended to accelerate gradually to reduce wear and tear caused by sudden acceleration.

DiSus-C*

- DiSus-C is an electronically controlled damper suspension system that adjusts ride comfort and handling stability by regulating the damping force of the electronically controlled dampers. Users can select comfort control modes of "Comfort" or "Sport" on the infotainment touchscreen → **Application center** → **Disus**.

Comfort control*

- Comfort control* During vehicle acceleration and deceleration, pitching motion occurs due to load transfer. By coordinating the control of the electronically controlled suspension damping and the braking pressure at the end of the braking phase, the vehicle’ s pitching is suppressed, thereby improving ride comfort.
- Users can select three comfort control modes of "weak", "moderate" or "strong" on the infotainment touchscreen → **Application center** → **Disus** App.

CAUTION

- The performance may be reduced under emergency braking conditions.

High-Speed Tire Blowout Stability Control*

The high-speed tire blowout stability control function detects tire blowout conditions during high-speed driving. It maintains the suspension damping at a neutral position to minimize impact on vehicle dynamics, and applies differential braking through the intelligent power braking system to suppress vehicle yaw and reduce speed until the vehicle is fully stabilized.

- The high-speed tire blowout stability control function applies to blowout occurring on paved roads at high speeds.
- The function is a driver assistance function designed to help the driver respond to a tire blowout.
- The function operates under specific conditions; if the activation conditions are not met, the function may not activate even if a tire blowout occurs.
- The blowout stability control function may exit or fail to activate under the following conditions, including but not limited to:
  - Tight curves, excessive speed, low speed, high vehicle dynamics, or special terrain conditions may prevent activation.
  - Malfunction of the blowout sensor may prevent activation.
  - Under extreme conditions, the function may activate briefly and then deactivate.
  - When driver takeover intent is detected, such as rapid steering wheel movement, the function exits.
  - This function is only applicable to single-wheel tire blowouts.
  - Activation of the braking ESP function may cause the function to exit.

WARNING

- This function is an emergency avoidance assistance feature and cannot fully replace the driver's manual driving actions after a high-speed tire blowout. In the event of a tire blowout, always monitor the vehicle status and surrounding conditions, and comply with traffic laws and regulations to prevent accidents, property damage, personal injury, or other dangerous situations.
- Comply with local laws and regulations, traffic rules, and vehicle operation guidelines. BYD reserves the right of final interpretation of this function.
- In the event of a tire blowout, remain calm, hold the steering wheel firmly, gently press

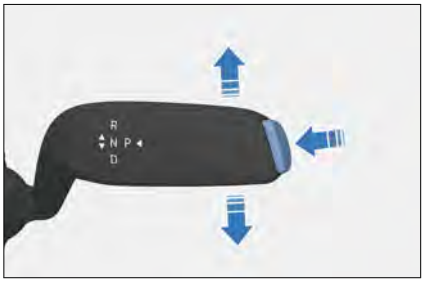
WARNING

the brake pedal, monitor the surrounding environment, safely pull over for inspection, and turn on the hazard warning lights. Then, place a warning triangle at an appropriate distance behind the vehicle as required by local regulations and call for roadside assistance.

Gear Shift Controls

The gear position of the gear shift controls is marked on the lever.

After starting the vehicle, press the brake pedal and push the gear shift lever up or down to shift between gears.



- Park ("P")
  - Press the brake pedal to bring the vehicle to a complete stop and press the "P" button to shift into Park.
- Drive ("D")
  - When the vehicle is in Park, press the brake pedal and push the lever down two positions to shift into Drive.
- Reverse ("R")
  - When the vehicle is in Park, press the brake pedal and push the lever up two positions to shift into Reverse.
- Neutral ("N")
  - When the vehicle is in Park, press the brake pedal, move the lever up or down, and hold briefly to shift into Neutral.
  - When the vehicle is in Drive, and the speed is below 10 km/h, move the lever up one position and hold briefly to shift into Neutral.
  - When in Reverse, with the vehicle speed no higher than 10 km/h, move the lever down for one gear and hold briefly to shift into Neutral.

WARNING

- Avoid downhill driving when the vehicle is in Neutral, as it may damage the transmission and affect driving safety.
- To prevent accidents, avoid depressing the accelerator pedal while shifting a gear. When the accelerator pedal is pressed, you cannot shift to Drive or Reverse.
- Never shift to Reverse or press the "P" button while the vehicle is moving, so as to prevent accidents.

CAUTION

- After shifting gears, always check on the instrument cluster. If the gear displayed does not match the one you selected, shift again.
- While reversing, be aware of the surroundings around the vehicle to avoid accidents.
- Make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park before getting off.

REMINDER

- Move the lever and then release it. It will automatically return to the middle position.
- If the vehicle speed prohibits shifting or the brake pedal is not depressed when moving the lever, the instrument cluster will show a message, and the gear will not change.
- You can shift to Drive and Reverse when OK indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.

Electronic Parking Brake (EPB)

Be sure to engage the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) every time before parking and leaving the vehicle.

Engaging EPB Manually

When the vehicle is stationary and is not in "P", you can engage EPB on the drop-down shortcut menu of the infotainment touchscreen. Then, EPB applies appropriate parking force, and Ⓟ on the instrument cluster flashes and then stays on, indicating that EPB is engaged. The "EPB ON" message is also displayed.

CAUTION

- When Ⓟ flashes, EPB is working. If the vehicle is on a slope, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ is steady on. Otherwise the vehicle may move down.

Engaging EPB Automatically

Engaging EPB automatically is designed to improve vehicle safety. Excessive reliance on or frequent use of the function is not recommended. For safety reasons, make sure that the vehicle is shifted into Park and the EPB is engaged before getting off.

- When the ignition is switched off, EPB engages automatically and Ⓟ lights up on the instrument cluster.
- Press the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily and shift into Park. EPB is engaged automatically. Do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.
- Press and hold the brake pedal to stop the vehicle steadily. If the driver's door is opened in Drive or Reverse, do not release the brake pedal until Ⓟ on the instrument cluster stops flashing and becomes steady on and the "EPB ON" message is displayed.

WARNING

- Do not release the brake pedal early in the process, especially when the vehicle is stopped on a slope, to prevent it from rolling.

Automatic EPB Release upon Vehicle Start

Releasing by shifting gear

- On a flat road or small slope (gradient less than 10°), with the vehicle parked, start the vehicle, press and hold the brake pedal, and shift from Park or Neutral into a driving gear such as Drive or Reverse. EPB is released automatically, the indicator goes off,

and the "EPB released" message is displayed.

CAUTION

- Be sure to always press and hold the brake pedal when shifting gears. Release the pedal only after the intended gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- The EPB system conducts power-up self-check within several seconds after the vehicle is started. In this process, the system does not respond to any function.

Releasing by pressing the accelerator pedal

- When the vehicle has been started and the gear is in a driving gear such as Drive or Reverse, engage EPB on the infotainment touchscreen, then simply press the accelerator pedal slowly to a certain degree. EPB is released automatically and Ⓟ turns off with the message "EPB released" displayed.

Emergency Braking When Brake Pedal Fails

- If braking fails or is blocked, continue to press the "P" button for over two seconds for emergency braking.

WARNING

- For safety considerations, refrain from using the "P" button and the EPB switch for emergency braking in normal driving.
- If the brake pedal fails or is blocked, use the emergency braking function while you can always keep the vehicle under control and drive normally.
- For safety considerations, refrain from using EPB for braking in normal driving. It is preferred to be used when the brake pedal fails or is blocked.
- As the EPB cannot go beyond the physical limit of road adhesion, activating the emergency brake function may result in vehicle drift, sideslip or deflection when the vehicle passes through bends or dangerous/heavy-traffic road sections, or when the vehicle is driven under severe weather conditions. Be careful to avoid any possible accident.

EPB Trailer Mode*

The trailer mode is mainly set for the automatic EPB engagement function with the ignition off. When the vehicle needs to be towed with the engine off, or when there is a fault, or during brake pad or brake shoe replacement and maintenance, you can activate the trailer mode to disable the EPB parking function.

- Tap ⚙ → **Drive** → **Overhaul** → **EPB Trailer Mode** to enable the function.
- EPB trailer mode can be activated when all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle is in Park.
  - Press the brake pedal.
  - The charging connector is not connected, and the vehicle is not being charged.
- When all three conditions are met, tap ⚙ → **Drive** → **Overhaul** → **EPB Trailer Mode** to enable the function. A corresponding prompt is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen. Release the brake pedal within 5 seconds and

press it again to enter the EPB trailer mode.

CAUTION

- After entering EPB trailer mode, the EPB is disabled, creating a risk of the vehicle rolling away. Please use with caution.
- If the vehicle fails and needs towing, see ***P252*** for recommended towing method.

REMINDER

- When the activating conditions of EPB trailer mode are not met, a corresponding prompt message displays on the infotainment touchscreen.
- After activating the trailer mode, the corresponding screen always displays on the infotainment touchscreen unless you tap to exit the trailer mode.

- EPB trailer mode can exit when any of the following conditions is met:
  - Disable the trailer mode on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - Press the "P" button.
  - Charging starts after the charging connector is connected.

EPB System Indicator

- When the vehicle is powered on, if the EPB is engaged, (P) is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle is powered off, if the EPB is engaged, (P) on the instrument cluster turns on and then turns off in several seconds.
- When the vehicle is powered on, the EPB system starts self-check. (!) turns on and then off in a few seconds on the instrument cluster. If it does not go off, the EPB or braking system may be faulty. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

EPB Operating Sound

- EPB motor noises can be heard while the EPB is being engaged or released.
- If there is a burning smell or unusual noise after emergency braking is activated, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider immediately.

WARNING

- To prevent the vehicle from moving, do not the replace EPB with the gearshift when parking. EPB must be used instead, and the vehicle must be in "P" gear.
- To prevent a serious accident, never allow any passenger in the vehicle to operate the EPB switch when the vehicle is running.
- When the EPB switch is pulled or released, the brake pedal must be pressed to prevent the vehicle from moving, and the subsequent locking of the gearshift that occurs because EPB cannot provide a sufficient parking force.

Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)

Auto Vehicle Hold(AVH): is activated automatically when the moving vehicle needs to be stationary for longer periods of time, such as in traffic jams on a slope or waiting at traffic lights.

AVH standby

- When the ignition is on, enable or disable AVH by pressing the physical AVH button or by the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control** → **Auto Hold**.
- When AVH is on, the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is displayed on the instrument cluster.



AVH activated

- When the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ is solid on, press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH. At this time, the vehicle is in AVH state with Ⓐ displayed on the instrument cluster.

⚠ CAUTION

- For AVH to be activated, all of the follow conditions must be met:
  - The driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors are closed.
  - Intelligent power braking system and electronic park brake (EPB) systems are normal.
- Pressing the accelerator pedal, shifting into Park, powering off the vehicle or engaging the EPB manually can make AVH exit to the standby status.

⚠ CAUTION

- AVH has a memory function that retains its previous state when the vehicle is restarted.

AVH running

- The AVH runs normally when it is activated, brake lights and the high-mount brake light are on, and the AVH indicator Ⓐ is solid on on the instrument cluster.
- The AVH function exits to the standby mode after the vehicle stops for 10 minutes, with the AVH standby indicator Ⓐ lighting up and gear shifted into Park.
  - Shift into “D”, drive the vehicle normally, then press and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle stops (vehicle speed reduces to zero) to activate AVH.

AVH exits

- When the AVH function runs normally, the following actions make AVH exit and shift the vehicle from Drive to Park automatically:
  - Opening the driver's door.
  - Unlocking the driver's seat belt.
  - Stopping the vehicle in Drive with EPB activated.
  - Pressing the AVH switch to disable AVH when releasing the brake pedal.

AVH suppressed

- Shift into Reverse and then AVH enters the slow-moving condition. When the vehicle is reversing (in Reverse) or shifts from Reverse into Drive to travel at a low speed, AVH cannot be activated but stays on standby to facilitate low-speed vehicle motion.

- To exit slow-moving mode, press the AVH switch or drive at a speed above 10 km/h. The AVH function is on standby and can be activated normally.

Driving Precautions

- Slow down when driving against strong winds.
- Drive slowly and carefully along gravel roads. To prevent tire damage, do not drive over sharp-edged objects or other road obstacles. Or it will severely damage the tires.
- Slow down on bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the impact may seriously damage wheels.
- Cleaning the vehicle or driving through deep water may wet brakes. When checking if they are wet, first ensure the surroundings are safe, then gently press the brake pedal. If you do not feel normal braking force, the brakes may be wet and need to be dried. While driving carefully, lightly press the brake pedal with the EPB engaged.

WARNING

- The driver shall ensure the riding safety of all passengers in the vehicle, guide them to correctly use vehicle features, and prevent children and other passengers operating control switches such as window switches in a wrong way.
- Make sure no occupant sticks their head or hands outside the vehicle, specially when it comes to children.
- Slow down when driving down steep slopes, and avoid braking too frequently to prevent disc overheating, which affects brake performance.
- Be careful when accelerating or braking on slippery roads. Quick acceleration or sudden braking will cause the vehicle to skid or deviate.
- Do not leave the vehicle when the engine or drive motor is running.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is running normally, the vehicle power output will be cut off for emergency power-off if the "START/STOP" button is pressed and held for over three seconds. At this time, it is recommended to press the hazard warning light button, coast along the roadside, and gradually slow down until the vehicle stops by pressing the brake pedal, engaging the EPB or hitting surrounding obstacles at a low speed.
- Before driving, make sure that EPB is fully released and that the EPB indicator light is off.
- Do not rest your feet on the brake pedal and accelerator pedal for a long time during driving. Otherwise, this will cause overheating, wear and waste of electric energy.
- Avoid driving through flooded areas as much as possible.
- Large amounts of water entering the engine compartment can cause damage to the engine power system or electrical components.

REMINDER

- If the vehicle battery is low, you can use the on-board generator function. Refer to the charging instructions section for more information.

Winter Driving Precautions

- Make sure the coolant is freeze-proof.
  - Use the same type of coolant as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature.
  - Incorrect coolant damages the cooling system.
- Check the low-voltage battery and cables conditions.
  - The low-voltage battery's capacity is lower in cold weather, so they must be fully charged in winter.
- Confirm that the engine oil viscosity is suitable for winter driving.
- Avoid door frost.
  - Spray some deicing agent or glycerin in the lock hole to prevent freezing.
- Use anti-freeze washer fluid.
  - These can be found in the BYD authorized dealer or service provider and the auto parts stores.
  - The water and anti-freeze ratio must conform to manufacturer instructions.

CAUTION

- Use special washer fluid to prevent paint damage.

- Prevent ice and snow from going under the fender liner.
  - Steering is difficult with ice or snow accumulating under the fenders. When driving in cold weather, stop from time to time and check for snow and ice under the fenders.
- It is recommended to carry emergency tools or items for different road conditions.
  - It is advisable to have snow chains, window scraper, bags of sand and salt, flashing signal, a shovel and connecting cables in the vehicle.

Winter Tires

- Winter tires provide better traction on snowy roads. The special rubber tread pattern makes the tires less affected by low temperatures and delivers excellent braking performance to improve driving safety.

Usage tips

- It is recommended to use winter tires in snow or ice conditions or at temperatures below 7°C. When temperatures rise to above 7 °C, install summer or all-season tires instead for driving safety and better performance.
- Winter tires must be the same size, load index, and speed rating as those originally provided by BYD.
- Winter tires must have adequate tread depth. Tires with a tread depth less than 4 mm do not perform well in winter conditions.
- Winter or summer tires are designed for specific acceleration conditions. Use them in the corresponding seasons to avoid poor traction or braking performance.
- Do not exceed the speed rating of winter tires, which is relatively low.
- After installing winter tires, inflate them to the design pressures.

Snow Chain Instructions

- Snow chains are only for emergencies or areas where they are permitted by laws.
- Snow chains should be installed on front wheels. Be careful when driving the vehicle installed with snow chains on snow-covered roads. Use thin snow chains. Some snow chains may damage tires, wheels, suspensions, and the vehicle body. The recommended snow chains are no larger than 5 mm in thickness or diameter, which provides enough space between tires and other parts in the hubcap.
- Read the component assembly drawings and other instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer carefully.
- Before purchasing and installing snow chains, consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider where your vehicle was purchased.
- In order to minimize wear of tires and snow chains, do not travel with snow chains on roads without snow.

REMINDER

- Driving speed must not exceed 30 km/h or the speed limit specified by the snow chain manufacturer.
- Drive carefully, paying attention to bumps, potholes, and sharp turns that can cause the vehicle to bounce.
- For vehicles with snow chains, avoid sharp turns or braking with locked wheels, and slow down the vehicle before entering a curve to avoid accidents due to loss of control.

REMINDER

- Install the chains symmetrically on the left and right sides and remove them immediately after driving out of snowy roads.
- If abnormal noise is heard from the snow chain, it indicates that the chain may contact vehicle components such as suspension, body or brake lines. In this case, stop the vehicle immediately for inspection.
- Please turn off the engine and engage the parking brake before installing snow chains. Do not Install snow chains when the tire pressure is insufficient

Driver Assistance

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

- The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) system, an extension of the traditional cruise control, uses front mmWave radars or a multi-purpose camera to detect the relative distance and speed of the vehicle ahead, so as to control vehicle speed accordingly. When there are no vehicles ahead, the vehicle maintains the set target cruise speed. When a vehicle is detected ahead, the system adjusts the vehicle's speed based on the time gap preset by the driver.

Status Description

- ACC standby:
  - After the vehicle is powered on, it defaults to standby mode if the activation conditions are met.

The driver can actively operate to enter the activation state. On the first power-up, the instrument panel displays ; on subsequent power-ups, the instrument panel displays .

- ACC activated:
  - The system is operational. It maintains the set speed or automatically adjusts the distance from the vehicle ahead. At this time, is displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Over speed:
  - You depress the accelerator pedal while ACC is active, causing the vehicle to respond to your acceleration.
- ACC failure:
  - There has been a failure in the system. No operation can be performed, and a prompt is displayed on the cluster.

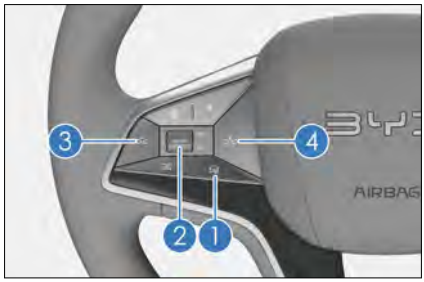
ACC Activation Conditions

- EPB is released.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle is stationary without rolling backwards.
- The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The ESC system is on, but not activated yet.
- Vehicle speed is not greater than 130 km/h.
- When parking (vehicle speed is 0), press the brake pedal.
- When the vehicle speed is greater than 0, the brake pedal is not pressed.
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The AEB function is not activated.

How to Use

ACC on/off button

- When is displayed, ACC can on standby and you can activate it through the following operations. In the power-on cycle of this vehicle, when the function is used for the first time, it can only be activated by the button ①.



- Once the function is activated, the system will automatically set the current speed as the target cruising speed. If the current speed is less than 30 km/h, the target cruising speed will be set to 30 km/h. During each power-on cycle, ACC can be activated by pressing button ① or by pressing the up key ② for non-first use of ACC. If ACC is activated by pressing the up button ②, the target cruise speed will be set to the speed previously set before the last deactivation.

Setting the target cruise speed

- When ACC is activated, you can set the cruise speed between 30–130 km/h by moving ② up or down. Move ② briefly upward or downward to increase or

decrease the set speed by 5 km/h per press, or hold ② in either direction to adjust the speed continuously by 1 km/h each time.

Setting following distance

- Press ③ or ④ to decrease or increase the following distance from the vehicle ahead. Across all levels, the faster the vehicle, the greater the distance.

Exiting ACC

- While ACC is active, pressing button ① for a second time or pressing the brake pedal makes the ACC system go on standby.

Increasing/Decreasing speed with ACC active

- When ACC is activated, you can accelerate manually by pressing the accelerator pedal; the system does not brake during this process.
- You can quickly increase the current speed using the accelerator pedal. When you release the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will return to the target speed set before acceleration.
- If rocker switch ② is pulled down while accelerating, the current speed will be reset as the target cruise speed.
- Move the lever ② upward to increase the target cruise speed. Press the button for a short time to accelerate 5km/h at a time, and press the button for a long time to accelerate 1 km/h continuously. If the speed exceeds 155 km/h or acceleration lasts longer than 5 minutes, ACC exits.

Follow-to-stop/start

- ACC brings the vehicle to a stop when the vehicle ahead stops in normal driving conditions. It automatically accelerates the vehicle away from a standstill if the vehicle ahead pulls away within a short period of time.
- If the vehicle ahead stops for a long time, depress the accelerator pedal or move ② upward to start the vehicle.
- If the stop duration is too long, ACC exits.

Speed adjustment on curve*

- This feature works only with ACC active.
- You can enable or disable the function on the central infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Speed Adjustment on Curve**. The function is disabled by default.
- After the function is turned on, when the vehicle is about to enter the curve under the active state of ICC, the system will slow down to the appropriate speed in advance according to the curvature of the curve to pass through the curve smoothly, so as to improve the driving safety and comfort.

System Limitations

- The front mmWave radars are installed in the front of the vehicle. Blockage of its detection area by contaminants can disturb the intended function. In particular, if the sensor is covered by snow completely, the ACC system exits and informs of this on the instrument cluster. System function will recover after blockage is removed and the vehicle is restarted or runs on normal roads for a while.
- Front mmWave radars may have a transient function failure from limited detection if the vehicle runs under special conditions, such as circular ramps or tunnels, for an extended period. The function can be recovered by restarting the vehicle or driving on normal roads for a while.

- Reaching or leaving a curve may delay or disturb target selection. In such cases, the ACC vehicle may not brake as expected or may brake late.
- On roads with sharp curves, such as winding roads, the vehicle ahead may be out of ACC sensor detection for several seconds due to sensor vision limitations, possibly causing the ACC vehicle to accelerate automatically.
- Traffic flow and weather conditions - such as rain and fog - must be heeded for setting vehicle distance on the ACC system. After the ACC system is properly set, the driver must be able to decelerate until the vehicle stops at any time.
- The ACC system may not be able to identify stationary or slow-moving objects, such as vehicles, the end of traffic, toll booths, bicycles, motorcycles, or pedestrians. This means a risk of collision and requires the driver to beware of the surroundings.
- The ACC system cannot identify pedestrians or oncoming vehicles.
- The ACC system can only achieve limited braking instead of emergency braking.
- Metal objects, such as rail or metal plates used in road construction, may interfere with front mmWave radars, causing it malfunction.
- Performance of front mmWave radar sensors may be affected by vibration or collision. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, motorcycle, four-wheeler, or pedestrian, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
- The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.

Precautions

- ACC is a convenience system rather than a safety system, obstacle detector, or collision warning system. The driver must keep control of the vehicle at all times and be fully responsible for it.
- When the function is active, the driver must keep their hands on the steering wheel and be ready to take control of the vehicle at any time.
- ACC assists instead of replacing the role of the driver. The driver is responsible for abiding by traffic rules and keeping vehicle control.
- For safety reasons, ACC cannot be activated with ESC disabled.
- ACC is suitable for highways and well-maintained roads, rather than complex urban or mountain roads.
- It is the driver's responsibility to keep distance from the vehicle ahead. The vehicle distance set by ACC meets the minimum distance required in driving environments in the country.
- Vehicle control is transferred to the driver if the accelerator or brake pedal is pressed with ACC activated. As a result, the ACC system cannot keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.
- ACC may have no or slow responses to a vehicle ahead that brakes or stops

suddenly, resulting in a risk of late braking. In such cases, there will be no take-over request.

- In some cases, such as when the vehicle ahead is going too slow, when lane change is too fast, or when the safe distance from the vehicle ahead is too short, there is no adequate time for the system to decrease the relative speed, so response has to come from the driver. The system cannot give audible or visual warnings in every case.
- When active with the vehicle motionless, ACC identifies any stationary obstacle ahead as the target and keeps the vehicle still to ensure a safe startup and prevent collision. However, this function cannot detect all obstacles, so the driver must be alert.
- A short distance from an adjacent lane (or a vehicle on an adjacent lane that is too close to the ACC vehicle's lane) may trigger ACC to brake.
- Vehicles coming into the ACC vehicle's lane and within the detection range of its front mmWave radars are identified as target vehicles and prompt a response accordingly, which may lead to hard or late braking.
- ACC cannot target vehicles with too small contact ratio, so the driver must keep control of the vehicle.
- When the vehicle stops as it follows a vehicle ahead, in rare cases, the system does not recognize the end of the vehicle ahead but the lower end of the target (for example, the rear axle of a truck with a high chassis or a vehicle bumper). In such cases, the system cannot ensure proper stop distance, so the driver must stay alert and be ready to brake.
- Modifying the vehicle structure, such as lowering the chassis or changing the front license mounting plate, may affect ACC.
- Do not use ACC when visibility is poor, or when driving on slopes, winding roads, or wet roads (covered in ice/snow or flooded).
- ACC cannot be activated if special driving modes* such as tow/snow/mud/sand/terrain are enabled.
- Make sure to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration and checking of front mmWave radars or the multi-purpose camera in any of the following situations:
  - The front mmWave radar, front bumper, or front windshield has been removed.
  - Wheel alignment has been carried out.
  - The vehicle has experienced a collision.
  - ACC system performance has degraded or the instrument cluster has prompted an system error.

Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*

- Intelligent cruise control (ICC) integrates adaptive cruise control (ACC) and lane control system (LCC). It assists the driver to control the steering wheel within the speed range of 0-130km/h, and continuously maintain the vehicle to drive in the current lane.
- When the function is active, the driver must keep their hands on the steering wheel and be ready to take control of the vehicle at any time.

ICC Activation Conditions

- EPB is released.
- The vehicle is in Drive.
- The vehicle is stationary without rolling backwards.
- The trunk, hood, and all doors are closed.
- The driver seat belt is fastened.
- The ESC system is on, but not activated yet.
- Vehicle speed is not greater than 130 km/h.
- It is activated when the vehicle is stopped (vehicle speed is 0), when the driver presses the brake, or when the AVH function is activated.
- It can be activated when the driver does not step on the brake when the vehicle is running (the vehicle speed is greater than 0).
- There is no vehicle network communication failure prompt on the instrument cluster.
- The automatic emergency braking (AEB) function is not activated.
- Two-way lane lines are clear and the vehicle is at the center of the lane.

How to Use

- Press the ICC button on the steering wheel to activate or deactivate ICC (when ICC is activated, the current speed is set as the cruise speed by default. If the current speed is less than 30 km/h, the cruise speed is set to 30 km/h).
- For how to set the cruise speed and vehicle distance, see ***P147***.
- Enable or disable ICC in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS→Driving Assist**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- When the ICC function is enabled, the standby state indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- When the ICC function is activated, the activated state indicator lights up on the instrument cluster.
- When ICC is operational, the vehicle drives by the set speed or by automatically adjusting the distance from the vehicle ahead.

Hand-off Reminder and Minimum Risk Strategy

- During the ICC activation process, the driver's continuous release will trigger the release reminder;
- After the three-level reminder is triggered, the system will automatically execute the minimum risk strategy, light up the double flash and control the vehicle to complete the comfortable parking in this lane.
- The following behaviors can interrupt the minimum risk strategy:
  - Turning off the hazard lights or activating a turn signal.
  - The driver steps on the accelerator pedal and turns the steering wheel at the same time;
  - The driver cancels the function through the steering wheel button/ paddle;
  - Shifting to Park.
- In a single power-on cycle, the ICC function is prohibited to be activated after the three-level alarm is triggered for three times, and the system is in the punishment mechanism state. The function can be activated normally

only after the system is powered on and off again.

Speed adjustment on curve*

- The curve speed droop function only works when the ICC function is active.
- You can enable or disable the function on the central infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Speed Adjustment on Curve**. The function is disabled by default.
- After the function is turned on, when the vehicle is about to enter the curve under the active state of ICC, the system will slow down to the appropriate speed in advance according to the curvature of the curve to pass through the curve smoothly, so as to improve the driving safety and comfort.

Precautions

- ICC integrates ACC and LCC. Therefore, ACC function precautions must be followed during use (see ***P147*** for details).
- At vehicle speeds between 0 km/h and 130 km/h when ICC is active:
  - If there are no lane lines ahead, transverse ICC control is suppressed and only ACC works. In that case, ICC working status indicator turns gray on the instrument cluster.
  - If lane lines ahead are clear and recognizable, transverse ICC control is activated automatically. In that case, ICC working status indicator shows activated status on the instrument cluster.
- ICC serves as a driver assistance system rather than an autonomous driving system. The driver should always maintain control of the vehicle, and their hands should not leave the steering wheel for too long. Otherwise, the system will exit after prompting the driver to take control.
- ICC can be affected by weather conditions, lighting and clarity of lane lines. Performance degrades significantly in situations such as backlighting, sunset, snow covered roads, and severely damaged roads.
- Do not use ICC on winding roads with sharp turns, icy and slippery bends, or under weather conditions, such as dense fog, heavy rain and heavy snow, liable to hinder the sensing operation of front mmWave radars or the multi-purpose camera.
- When the driver actively turns on the turn signal, the ICC function is downgraded to ACC.
- Situations where ICC cannot be used include:
  - The sensor is blocked.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather conditions.
  - Active safety function has been triggered.
  - Vehicle speed exceeds the specified range.
  - ICC cannot be activated if special driving modes* such as tow/snow/mud/sand/terrain are enabled.

WARNING

- ICC is only a driving assistance function, and the precautions only include the common conditions that affect the ICC function. In addition, there may be other factors that may also affect the performance of the function. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety and must always mind surrounding traffic.

WARNING

- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause ICC to fail.
- When the vehicle passes through a too curvy road, it may exceed the system's ability to pass through the curve and automatically exit the ICC function. The driver should always be aware of the road environment and function status, and promptly take over vehicle control when necessary to avoid potential collisions.
- When the vehicle is running at high speed, the driver should always pay attention to the road environment and functional status, and take over the control of the vehicle in time when necessary, otherwise collision is very likely to occur.
- Use ICC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Forward Collision Warning (FCW) and Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)*

- Forward Collision Warning (FCW) and Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB) detect vehicles and pedestrians ahead by using front mmWave radar and a camera. When detecting a risk of collision, the system gives audible and visual alarms to alert the driver and improves the potential braking pressure for better response timing. If detecting increased risk of collision, the system automatically applies braking pressure to assist in collision avoidance or impact reduction.
- In the forward collision warning system, the pre-warning and emergency warning functions operate within a speed range of 30-150 km/h.
- The automatic emergency braking system operates within a speed range of 4-90 km/h.

How to Use

- Each time the vehicle is powered on, the forward collision warning and automatic emergency braking functions are turned on as the same as last time. To enable or disable FCW and AEB, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**. The forward collision alert sensitivity defaults to "moderate" and the system remembers the last setting.

Forward collision warning (FCW)

- Safe distance warning
  - If the vehicle is too close to the vehicle ahead at speeds above 65 km/h for too long, the system gives a safety distance warning, and lights up on the instrument cluster.
- Pre-warning
  - If the vehicle travels at speeds above 30 km/h and the system recognizes a risk of collision with a vehicle ahead, the system will give a warning visually and audibly, and the indicator on the cluster will light up and the buzzer will alarm. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.
- Emergency warning
  - If the vehicle travels at speeds above 30 km/h and the driver fails to respond to the pre-warning, the system will give a warning visually

and audibly.  flashes and there is a short braking warning. The driver needs to promptly take appropriate actions to ensure safe following distance.

Automatic emergency braking (AEB)

- If the driver fails to respond to the emergency alarm in the forward collision warning and the system judges that the dangerous situation has escalated further, it will trigger automatic emergency braking to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.

System Limitations

- FCW may be affected or give no response in the following cases:
  - On rainy, snowy or foggy days, or exposure to direct sunlight or glaring lights, or significantly varying lighting conditions.
  - Dirty, hazy, damaged or blocked sensor.
- In complex traffic, FCW and AEB may be unable to properly respond to the following circumstances:
  - Pedestrians or vehicles move too quickly into the sensor's detection range.
  - Pedestrians are obscured by other objects.
  - Pedestrian outlines are indistinguishable from the surroundings.
  - Pedestrians are not detected, due to, for example, coverage by special clothing or other materials.
  - The vehicle is on a sharp curve.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar cross section of the target (a bicycle, motorcycle, four-wheeler, or pedestrian, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance, resulting in either late or no response to those vehicles.
- The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.

Precautions

- FCW cannot ensure zero collision. In complex traffic, the system cannot always clearly identify all the vehicles or pedestrians. FCW may trigger unnecessary warning or braking action for well covers, iron plates or road signs.
- Make sure to drive safely and observe surrounding traffic conditions. AEB is not a substitute for normal braking operation in any event.
- Do not overly rely on FCW as this may result in severe injuries or deaths. The system is only an auxiliary safety tool. The driver must always keep a safe distance from vehicles ahead, control the speed, and be ready to brake or steer away when necessary. The driver must keep control of the vehicle at all times and be fully responsible for safe driving.
- AEB is activated only when it exceeds certain speeds. Careful driving is always required, because the system may not be triggered correctly.
- AEB cannot work normally when the ESC function is disabled or the fault light is on.

- If FCW gives an alarm, the driver must brake based on traffic conditions to decrease vehicle speed or steer away from obstacles.
- If the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead for too long, a safety distance warning will be given. If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, collision may be unavoidable.
- The system will not trigger AEB when the driver is aware of an emergency warning, but turns the steering wheel, or presses the accelerator pedal or brake pedal hard.
- Front mmWave radars may have a transient function failure from limited detection if the vehicle runs under special conditions, such as circular ramps or tunnels, for an extended period. The function can be recovered as the vehicle is back on normal roads for a while.
- Sometimes the surfaces of front mmWave radars or the multi-purpose camera are dirty or obscured by foreign objects. In this case, a message is displayed on the instrument cluster (dirt or foreign objects on the surface may blind the sensors). Remove foreign matter from the sensor as required. The functions will return normal after the sensor is cleaned.
- As the pedestrian protection function is limited by certain physical conditions, the driver must take timely and effective control of the vehicle under dangerous conditions.
- The system cannot completely protect pedestrians or avoid accidents and severe injuries on its own.
- Under certain complex conditions, such as on winding roads, the pedestrian protection function may trigger unnecessary warning or braking.
- System failure may trigger wrong warnings or braking. This may be caused, for example, by the misalignment of the front mmWave radar or multi-purpose camera.
- When AEB is triggered, a large amount of hydraulic pressure will be required to push the caliper in a short time and there will be a sizzling noise.
- The AEB system is triggered only with doors closed and seat belts fastened. It fails to work in the following cases:
  - Any door is not closed or it is opened when the vehicle is moving.
  - The seat belt is not fastened or it is unfastened when the vehicle is moving.
  - The driver accelerates or decelerates rapidly or turns the steering wheel quickly.
- System performance may be reduced in the following cases:
  - Strong front bumper impact from accidents or other causes.
  - Improperly inflated or worn out tires. Unqualified tires installed.
  - Snow chains installed.
  - Use of a small spare tire or tire repair kit.
- Go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for professional calibration of the front mmWave radar or multi-purpose camera in any of the following situations:
  - The front mmWave radar or multi-purpose camera has been removed.
  - Toe-in or rear camber has been adjusted during wheel alignment.
  - The position of front mmWave radars or multi-purpose camera change after a collision.

- ACC system performance has degraded or become abnormal.

- Do not try to test AEB with carton, iron plate, dummy and other objects. The system may not work properly and thus result in accidents.

WARNING

- FCW (Forward Collision Warning) and AEB (Automatic Emergency Braking) are only intended as driving assistance features. The precautions only include common situations that may affect the forward collision warning and automatic emergency braking functions. Many other factors can also impact the performance of these functions. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary measures promptly when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCW and AEB to fail.
- Use FCW and AEB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) and Front Cross Traffic Brake (FCTB)*

- Upon vehicle startup, front cross traffic alert (FCTA) and front cross traffic braking (FCTB) detect vehicles crossing the driveway at the front through mmWave radars on both sides of the front bumper to alert the driver and engage the brake if necessary. When the vehicle just started, the function detects a risk of collision with a vehicle crossing the driveway at the front, it provides the driver with visual and audible alerts. If the driver does not respond to the warning and the system determines that a collision is imminent, automatic emergency braking is triggered to assist the driver in avoiding or mitigating the collision.
- The operating speed range of FCTA is 10-20km/h, and the operating speed range of AEB is 4-20 km/h.

How to Use

- Enable or disable the FCTA and FCTB on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings. The function is disabled as delivered from the factory.
- When the FCTB function is activated, the instrument will give an alert.
- When the FCTB function is activated, the instrument will give an alert and the vehicle will automatically apply emergency braking.

Precautions

- While the system provides assistance in monitoring front left and right sides, it cannot replace the driver's observation and judgment. The driver must keep control of vehicle at all times and drive properly and is fully responsible for the vehicle.
- When a target vehicle is approaching from the side at a high speed, the FCTA/FCTB system may not be able to provide adequate warning.
- The driver must ensure the normal operation of the system, keeping mmWave radars on both side of the bumper in good condition. For example, dirt, snow, or other obstructions need to be cleared right away.

- In addition, detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.
- Under some circumstances, it is difficult for the system to assist the driver, and detection may be affected or delayed. Possible circumstances include, but are not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from the side suddenly changes the lane.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The radar cross section of the target (for example, a bicycle or electric moped) is too small.
  - The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - The vehicle encounters complex metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- The system does not work when:
  - Targets are outside the mmWave radar's detection range.
  - FCTA or FCTB is switched off.
  - The vehicle is not in Drive.
  - Four doors are open.
  - System initialization has not been complete yet.
  - MmWave radar(s) fail.
  - Vehicles coming from the front left or right side are detected too late at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
- Influence of vibration or collision on mmWave radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. If this is detected, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- FCTB cannot be activated if special driving modes such as trailer/snow/mud/sand/terrain are enabled.

WARNING

- The FCTA/FCTB is only used as a driving assistance function. The precautions only include the common conditions affecting the front lateral collision warning and front lateral collision braking function. Many factors may affect the function performance. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary measures promptly when encountering potential hazards. The driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause FCTA or FCTB to fail or lead to late braking.
- Use FCTA and FCTB based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)*

Lane Departure Assist (LDA) includes two sub-functions: Lane Departure Warning (LDW) and Lane Departure Prevention (LDP) LDW and LDP work within the speed of 60–150km/h.

Lane Departure Warning (LDW)

- The function identifies the front lane lines by the front camera and sensors on the upper front windshield. When the driver unconsciously departs from the current lane, the system issues instrument icons and steering wheel vibration alarms to alert the driver by computing the relative distance

between the vehicle and lane lines and considering the surroundings.

Lane Departure Prevention (LDP)

- The function identifies the front lane lines by the front camera on the upper front windshield. When the driver unconsciously departs from the current lane, the system controls the steering wheel to correct lane departure after calculating the relative position of the vehicle and lane lines and considering the surroundings.

How to Use

- Users can turn on or off LDW and LDP functions through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Lane Departure Assistance**. The feature is default set to off when the vehicle is manufactured. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- Users can adjust the function modes of LDW and LDP through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**. Disable, steering wheel vibration alert, automatic steering correction assistance.
- When LDW is activated, the system detects unintentional lane departure without driver input. An alert is issued to prompt the driver to correct the steering in time, and the lane marking on the side of departure will be displayed in red on the instrument cluster.
- The driver must keep hands on the steering wheel during LDP activation, or the instrument cluster will prompt the driver to take over the steering wheel. The text prompts differ based on the number of times the steering wheel is released. For the first short-term release, the prompt is "Please gently turn the steering wheel." For the second release, the prompt is "Please gently turn the steering wheel." For the third release, the prompt is "Please take immediate control."
- When LDW or LDP fails, is displayed on the instrument cluster with a reminder sound and a pop-up prompt message.

System Limitations

- The detection of lane lines by the front camera is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include, but are not limited to:
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
  - Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera;
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - Lane markings obscured by direct sunlight or tree shadows.

Precautions

- LDA is suppressed if a turn signal is used and the vehicle changes lane as indicated by the turn signal.
- LDA may be suppressed if the vehicle travels over lane lines or if lane lines are unclear, too thin, worn, blurred, or covered by dirt/snow.
- LDA may be suppressed if the lane is too wide or too narrow, if the number of lanes increases or decreases, if lane markings change suddenly on ramps

or exits, or in situations of complex line arrangements.

- LDA may be suppressed on slopes or winding roads when the vehicle travels too close to the vehicle ahead or when the vehicle ahead blocks lane lines.
- LDA may be suppressed when the vehicle jolts, accelerates or decelerates too quickly, or takes a sharp turn.
- The system operation may be affected if the windshield within the camera visual field is cracked, if the glass is dyed or inadequately coated; or if any reflecting object is placed on the dashboard or any other object interferes with camera sight.
- For safety reasons, do not test LDW function on your own.
- The front camera must not be blocked or exposed to strong lights. If the system is interrupted by short time periods of such blockage or exposure, clear the camera's field of view to resume the functionality. If it does not, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Disabling LDA is recommended under any of the following circumstances:
  - Driving in a sporty style.
  - Severe weather conditions
  - On uneven roads
- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - Unclear lane lines
  - Incomplete lane lines
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the front camera or late function activation include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked
  - Rain, snow, smog, and other extreme weathers.
  - Partially or completely blocked camera lens.
  - LDW and LDP cannot be activated if special driving modes* such as tow/ snow/mud/sand/terrain are enabled.

WARNING

- LDA serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause LDA to fail.
- Precautions include only the common conditions that affect Lane Departure Assist. Many factors may affect the performance of the function. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary control measures promptly if the function is suppressed or deactivated.
- Use LDA based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)*

- Emergent Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA) uses high-definition cameras installed on the front windshield and other sensors to detect lane lines in front of the vehicle, and combines this with rear corner millimeter-wave radar to detect vehicles in adjacent lanes from behind. If the system detects that the driver is unintentionally deviating from the lane or starting to change lanes, and determines that there is a risk of the vehicle deviating

or a collision risk with the target vehicle, it will activate theElectrical Power Steering (EPS) to provide counter-torque, thereby controlling the vehicle to stay in the current lane. This helps prevent the vehicle from unintentionally crossing road boundaries or colliding with oncoming vehicles or vehicles overtaking from adjacent lanes.

- ELKA works within the speed of 60~150km/h.
- During the activation of the ELKA function, the drive's hands must remain on the steering wheel; otherwise, the system will issue a warning.

How to Use

- The user can activate or deactivate the ELKA through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** setting interface. The system is off by factory default. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- When the ELKA system fails, is solid on on the instrument cluster. Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

System Limitations

- The detection of lane lines by the front camera is easily interfered by the environment. Situations that may lead to failure or performance degradation of the system include, but are not limited to:
  - Poor visibility on snowy, rainy, or foggy days.
  - Dirty or fogged front windshield, or blocked front camera;
  - Glaring from direct sunlight, reflection in puddles, or oncoming vehicles
  - Sudden changes in light, such as when the vehicle is entering or exiting a tunnel.
  - Lane lines obscured by tree shadows on roads in direct sunlight on sunny days;
  - Unidentifiable road boundary with grass, soil, or curb

Precautions

- Situations where lane lines may not be identified include, but are not limited to:
  - There are pedestrians, animals, or specialty or specially-shaped vehicles.
  - Unclear or incomplete lane lines.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of the camera or late alarm include but are not limited to:
  - Camera coming off, loosely installed, or blocked
  - Rain, snow, smog, and other extreme weathers.
  - Partially or completely blocked camera lens.
- Situations that may result in detection failure of mmWave radars or late alarms include, but are not limited to:
  - MmWave radar(s) come off, are loosely installed, or are blocked.
  - Rain, snow, smog, and other extreme weathers.
  - The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions;

- ELKA cannot be activated if special driving modes* such as tow/ snow/mud/sand/terrain are enabled.

WARNING

- ELKA serves as a driving assistance function only, so the driver is fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause ELKA to fail.
- The precautions only include common situations that may affect the neighboring vehicle proximity avoidance function. However, many other factors can also impact the performance of the function. The driver must stay aware of the surroundings and take necessary measures promptly when encountering potential hazards.

AFL indicator*

The adaptive front light (AFL)* system detects current driving conditions by using front camera sensors and automatically activates or deactivates the high beam accordingly, when vehicle speed exceeds 35 km/h.

How to Use

- Enable or disable AFL on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Light** → **Exterior**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- With the function enabled, when you set the light switch to the auto lights position, the light meets conditions and vehicle speed exceeds 35 km/h, the system automatically switches between low and high beams based on the current driving environment.
- When the AFL indicator function is enabled, instrument cluster Indicator on Standby Indicator： .
- When the AFL indicator function is activated, instrument cluster Indicator on Activated Indicator： .
- When the AFL indicator function is malfunctions, instrument cluster Indicator on Fault Indicator： .

Precautions

- The AFL system is an auxiliary light control function, but it cannot completely replace the driver's judgment. The driver must observe road regulations and actively switch between high and low beams according to road condition changes at all times.
- When the vehicle is in a high dynamic state (such as anti-lock braking system (ABS) or electronic body stability system (ESC) activation), or the driver turns on the fog lamp, wiper high speed gear, reverse driving, the light gear is not Auto gear, the ambient light is too strong, or the operation lever selects to turn on the high beam. The AFL system is inhibited.
- Due to a variety of environmental factors and conditions, the AFL may be triggered or disabled by mistake. Typical scenarios include, but are not limited to:
  - The weather, such as fog, rain or snow, is extremely terrible for driving.
  - There are traffic participants with poor lighting (such as pedestrians and bicycles), railways or waterways nearby, or wild animals on the roads.

- There are strongly reflective objects around, such as traffic signs on highways and water reflection on the road surface.
- The front windshield that is fogged, dirty, or blocked by stickers or decorations.

- If the vehicle has been involved in a collision or the sensor has been reassembled, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration to avoid affecting system performance.

WARNING

- The AFL is only a driving assistance function, which may be triggered by mistake or fail due to several factors such as weather and road conditions. The driver is fully responsible for the driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause AFL to fail.
- Cautions include only the common conditions that affect the AFL. Many factors may affect the performance of the function. The driver should always observe the surrounding situation and actively switch the high and low beam headlights if necessary.
- Use AFL based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)*

The Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) identifies speed limit information on the road through the camera. When the speed limit icon on the instrument cluster lights up, it means the vehicle speed should be within range.

How to Use

- Enable or disable TSR in infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist** → **Traffic Sign Recognition**.
- When the system identifies a speed limit sign, the speed limit icon identified displays (such as 80) on the instrument cluster.
- When the vehicle speed exceeds the detected speed limit, the speed limit icon on the instrument cluster flashes to remind the driver to stay within the speed limit.
- When the system identifies the end of speed limit icon or after the vehicle travels for a while, the speed limit icon disappears.

Precautions

- The speed limit icon disappears from the instrument cluster within a certain distance after system recognition. The driver must control speed within range.
- The TSR system can identify speed limit signs only, and will not control speed. The control over the vehicle always vests in the driver. Please drive properly.
- Weight limit signs not in standard size as per national regulations may mistakenly be identified as speed limit signs.
- If a speed limit sign is unclear, distorted, inclined, reflective, or partly blocked or overlaid, the multi-purpose camera may fail to or incorrectly identify the sign.
- TSR performance depends on weather conditions, lighting, and sign visibility.

The system may fail to or incorrectly identify the sign at night, at sunset, or in rainy, foggy, hazy, snowy or dusty environment, when light is coming from the back of the vehicle, or when there is a sudden change in lighting.

- In case the vehicle has been involved in a collision or the multi-purpose camera's sensor has been reassembled, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for sensor calibration so as to avoid affecting system performance.

WARNING

- TSR serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause TSR to fail or lead to late alarms.
- Cautions include only the common conditions that affect Lane Departure Assist. Many factors may affect the performance of the function. Always remain aware of the surroundings and adhere to all roadside signage and applicable regulations.
- Use TSR based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)*

- When the Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC) function is enabled, if the system detects a speed limit sign and the vehicle is traveling above the speed indicated by the sign, the system will prompt the driver to adjust the ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) target cruising speed to the detected speed limit. After the driver confirms this, the ACC target cruising speed will be set to the detected speed limit value, ensuring the vehicle does not exceed the speed limit.
- The driver can activate this function within a speed range of 30 to 130 km/h.

How to Use

- The user can activate or deactivate the ISLC through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Driving Assist** setting interface.
- When TSR is disabled, ISLC also ceases to function.
- With TSR on, ISLC can be enabled or disabled depending on your needs.
- ISLC can be activated provided that ACC is active.

Precautions

- ISLC integrates ACC and TSR. Therefore, ACC and TSR function precautions must be followed during use.
- The intelligent speed limit system may sometimes fail to recognize or accurately identify speed limits. Do not overly rely on the system to identify road speed limits. Please set the speed according to traffic laws and regulations, as well as the actual road conditions, to ensure the vehicle travels at a safe and legal speed.
- ISLC performance depends on weather conditions, lighting, and traffic sign visibility. The system may fail to or incorrectly identify the sign at night or sunset, in rainy, foggy, hazy, snowy or dusty environment, when light is coming from the back of the vehicle,

or when there is a sudden change in lighting.

WARNING

- ISLC serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause ISLC to fail or lead to late alarms.
- The notes only include common situations that may affect the Intelligent Speed Limit (ISLC) function. However, many other factors can also impact the performance of the function. Please pay attention to the speed limits and follow traffic laws and regulations. Do not exceed the speed limit.
- Use ISLC based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Blind Spot Assist (BSA)*

Blind spot assist (BSA) includes Door Open Warning (DOW), Rear Collision Warning (RCW), the rear assist includes Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA),Rear Cross Traffic Braking (RCTB) and Blind Spot Detection (BSD).

How to Use

- Enable or disable BSD, DOW, RCTA, RCTB, RCW in the infotainment touchscreen → → **ADAS** → **Safety Assist**. When the vehicle is started, the system defaults to previous settings.
- No relevant indicators are displayed on the instrument cluster when the BSA is off.
- When BSA is in standby mode, if any of the vehicle conditions, such as speed or gear status, do not meet the requirements of any function, BSA will not be activated.
- When the blind spot safety assist is activated, the instrument panel displays the radar for the left or right rear side of the vehicle, indicating that the function is active;
- When the blind spot safety assist system fails, the instrument panel warning light will illuminate and indicate that the function is temporarily unavailable. If a fault occurs, please contact an authorized BYD service center for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD)

- At vehicle speed above 15 km/h, if a vehicle in blind spots on an adjacent lane is detected or a vehicle approaching quickly on the adjacent lane, the indicator on the corresponding side mirror lights up. If the turn signal lamp on the same side is turned on at this time, when there is a lane change or a potential lane change, the exterior rearview mirror warning lamp will flash, the atmosphere lamp will light up and the light-colored radar wave on the same side of the instrument will flash to warn the driver that it may be dangerous to continue to change lanes. Please pay attention to safe driving.



Door open warning (DOW)

- If the vehicle is stationary and the door is unlocked, and the moving target approaches the vehicle from the rear of the adjacent lane, the door opening safety reminder function will remind the driver to pay attention to the vehicle coming from the rear through the constant light of the outside rearview mirror alarm lamp, and at the same time, there is a pop-up window reminder on the instrument cluster. If the driver tries to open the door at this time, the exterior rearview mirror is always on or flashing (the first level is solid on and the second level is flashing).

Rear collision warning (RCW)

- If it is detected that the rapid approach of a vehicle driving behind the lane may lead to a collision risk, the RCW function lights up the vehicle emergency warning lamp (double flashing lamp) to indicate that the driver of the rear vehicle may have a collision risk, the interior atmosphere lamp and the front left and right atmosphere lamp (corresponding direction) are always on, and the red area at the rear of the instrument is highlighted. At the same time, the system will remind the driver through the alarm lamp on the outside rearview mirror, please pay attention to safety.
- The operating speed range of the rear collision warning system is 0-150km/h.

Rear cross traffic alert (RCTA)

- When the vehicle is reversing, the RCTA system detects the vehicles traveling in the blind spot at the back. If it is detected that there is a risk of collision between the vehicle and the rear lateral crossing vehicle, the driver will be reminded by instrument prompt and alarm sound to reduce the possibility of collision.
- The operating speed range of the rear lateral collision warning system is 0-15 km/h.

Rear cross traffic braking (RCTB)

- RCTB is used if the vehicle meets another vehicle crossing the road when leaving a vertical/slanted parking space. It gives a warning and helps the driver brake to prevent collision, especially when the visual field of the driver is blocked by the vehicle parking beside.
- The operating speed range of the rear lateral impact braking system is 0-10 km/h.

System Limitations

- In some cases, the system will be difficult to assist the driver, blind spot assist and rear assist may be affected or delayed, including but not limited to:
  - The vehicle coming from behind changes the lane suddenly.
  - The vehicle drives at sharp turns, slopes, or other settings.
  - Vehicles come from behind at a relative speed above 80 km/h.
  - The target vehicle is obscured.
  - The vehicle is on a curve which is too sharp, or is entering or exiting a curve.

- The vehicle is running under severe weather, such as rain or snow.
- Radar coming off, loosely installed, or blocked;
- The vehicle encounters certain metal guardrails or similar road conditions.
- Detection may be affected or delayed in some environments. If the radar reflective cross section of the target (a bicycle, three-wheelers, carriage, pedestrian, motorized bicycle or motorcycle, for example) is too small, the system may not be able to establish its distance to the target ahead, resulting in either late or no response to the target.
- The mmWave radars may malfunction or misidentify objects due to interference from other mmWave radars.
- Detection may also be affected or delayed by noise or electromagnetic interference.

Precautions

- Blind spot safety assist and rear assist can help the driver monitor the blind spots in the side mirrors, but they cannot replace the drive's subjective observation and judgment, nor can they replace the use of the interior and exterior side mirrors. The driver must keep control of vehicle at all times and drive properly and is fully responsible for the vehicle.
- The BSA and rear assist may be unable to provide adequate warning on target vehicles approaching from behind at a high speed.
- The driver should ensure the proper functioning of the blind spot safety assist and maintain the condition of the radar installation areas in good condition. Any obstructions such as mud, snow, or other coverings should be promptly removed.
- If an object with a large reflective cross section, such as a large roadside baffle, a large roadside billboard, or a reflector in a tunnel, is wrongly selected as the detected target, the blind area assistance will give an early warning.
- BSA and Rear Assist will not operate in the travel with trailer mode*.
- Blind spot monitoring will not work when reversing.
- Influence of vibration or collision on BSA and rear assist radar sensor calibration can degrade system performance. If this is detected, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- Blind Spot Assist (BSA) and Rear Assist serves as driver assistance only, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Influence of weather, road conditions, and other factors may cause BSA and rear assist to fail or lead to late alarms.
- Blind spot assist (BSA) and rear assist are only used as a driving assistance function. The precautions only include the common situations that affect the blind area safety assistance and rear assistance functions. Many factors may affect the functional performance. Drivers should always observe the surrounding situation to ensure safe driving.
- Use BSA and rear assist based on your needs, traffic, and road conditions.

Driver Monitoring System (DMS)

The driver monitoring system (DMS), including fatigue and distraction driving warning, is designed to monitor and assess the driving status locally by taking cabin photos with the system's camera. Based on the results, it reminds the driver of safe and careful driving.

How to Use

- The camera for driver monitoring assistance is mounted on the A-pillar of the driver's side. Make sure it is unobstructed before use, or DMS may not function normally.



- When the ignition is ON, enable or disable the Driver Monitoring Systems function on the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Cabin Perception**.

Fatigue driving warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, fatigue driving warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of fatigue, such as closing eyes, it alerts the driver promptly through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, or an audible alarm.

Distraction driving warning

- With the vehicle speed meeting the system activation condition, distraction driving warning enabled and the camera unobstructed, when the system detects signs of distraction, for example, the sight deviates from the front for a certain period of time, and there is no steering action or the turn signals are not turned on, it alerts the driver promptly through a visual warning on the instrument cluster, or an audible alarm.
- **Activation conditions**
  - DMS is activated.
  - The vehicle speed reaches 20 km/h.
  - Camera unobstructed and functioning normally.

CAUTION

- Clean the DMS camera lens with a clean and soft cloth and exercise caution to prevent any damage to the surface.

Precautions

- The driver monitoring system is only an auxiliary system and is not capable of effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. It cannot completely replace the driver's subjective observation and judgment. The driver must maintain control of the vehicle at all times, complying with all road laws and regulations, and taking full responsibility for the vehicle.
- The proper functioning and accuracy of the driver monitoring assistance can be affected by a number of situations, including but not limited to:
  - The in-vehicle camera permission is not enabled.
  - Driver monitoring assistance is disabled.

- The camera is obstructed.
- The camera is directly exposed to strong light.
- Part of the driver's face is exposed to light or the complete facial features are hard to recognize.
- The driver wears infrared-blocking glasses or glasses with thick lenses.
- The driver wears a mask or something that covers the face.
- The driver is not properly seated or the driver's face is in the blind spot of the camera.

WARNING

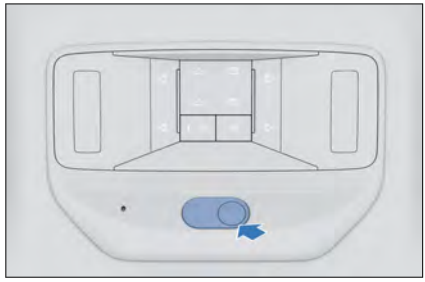
- The driver should stop the vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible when feeling tired to avoid fatigue driving.

Occupant Monitoring System

The occupant monitoring system (OMS) uses an in-cabin camera to capture interior scenes, collect image data, and analyze driver behavior, helping enhance driver safety. It includes features such as incorrect seat belt usage detection. Actual functions may vary depending on the vehicle configuration.

How to Use

- The OMS camera is installed beneath the reading lamp. Before use, ensure that the camera is not obstructed.



Functions

- Incorrect seat belt usage detection
  - After the driver fastens the seat belt, the system automatically detects improper seat belt usage and alerts the driver through an audible warning and a pop-up message on the instrument cluster.
  - When an alarm is triggered, a pop-up on the center infotainment touchscreen allows you to mute the alarm. If the buckle status remains unchanged, the system will remain muted.

CAUTION

- The proper operation and accuracy of the OMS may be affected by various factors, including but not limited to:
  - The camera is obstructed.
  - The camera is directly exposed to strong light.
  - Conditions exceed the effective operating range happen.
  - The seat belt is significantly obstructed (such as by thick clothing or long hair).
  - The color of clothing is highly similar to that of the seat belt.

CAUTION

- Clean the OMS camera lens with a clean and soft cloth. Take care not to damage the lens surface.
- During each trip, once the system detects that the seat belt is correctly fastened, it assumes the status remains unchanged as long as the buckle status does not change.

REMINDER

- All camera data is processed locally within the vehicle. The data is neither saved nor uploaded to any server and is deleted immediately after the assessment is complete.

Tire Pressure Monitoring

- The direct tire pressure monitoring system is an auxiliary system that monitors tire pressure in real time to improve vehicle safety and comfort and reduce tire wear and energy consumption due to insufficient tire pressure.
- Access the tire pressure screen by pressing button on the steering wheel.

Tire pressure system alarm

- When the pressure of any tire is lower than 80% of the temperature-compensated standard tire pressure while the system is operational, the tire pressure fault warning light lights up and the tire pressure value turns yellow. In that case, it is recommended to check for slow air leakage and inflate the tire to the correct pressure value.
- When the temperature of any tire is above 85°C for three consecutive minutes, the tire pressure system gives a high temperature alarm, and the temperature value of the corresponding tire turns yellow. You are then recommended to stop the vehicle and wait for the tire temperature to decrease before further driving.
- When the system is running, if a fault occurs, the tire pressure fault warning light is solid on after flashing, and the message "No Signal" or "Please check TPMS" is displayed on the instrument cluster. In that case, check the tire pressure monitoring module, and check for any surrounding electromagnetic source nearby. If the alarm persists for a long time, please contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- The system does not stop vehicle traveling in the event of abnormal tire pressure. Therefore, each time before driving, ensure that the tire pressure conforms to the requirements specified by the manufacturer. If not, do not drive, otherwise vehicle damage or personal injury can occur.
- If pressure is found to be abnormal while driving, check the tire pressure immediately. If the low pressure warning light comes on, avoid sharp turns or emergency braking, and reduce vehicle speed, pull it over to the curb and stop as soon as possible. Driving with low tire pressure can cause permanent damage to tires and increase the likelihood of tire scrapping. Serious tire damage can lead to traffic accidents,

WARNING

resulting in serious injuries or deaths.

CAUTION

- The running time of the tire pressure monitoring module is related to the daily travel distance and other factors.
- The monitoring module regularly transmits tire pressure and other information to the display. Therefore, if the tire pressure drops suddenly or there is a flat tire, the monitoring module will not transmit data to the display until the next monitoring. In this case, the vehicle may be out of control. If there is a flat tire and monitoring fails to inform, or if you feel that there are some tire problems, stop driving immediately instead of waiting for the display to signal an alarm.
- Incorrectly installed monitoring module affects the air tightness of the tire. It is recommended that the installation and replacement of the pressure monitoring module be carried out by professional technicians of a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in accordance with the requirements of the installation manual.
- Since tire pressure varies with regional temperatures, inflate or deflate the tires according to the values displayed on the instrument cluster and the standard tire pressure values.
- The tire pressure monitoring system may be disturbed by non-BYD approved electrical accessories on the vehicle. This is not a tire pressure system failure.
- The tire pressure system needs to be matched again after replacement of wheel rims or spare tires* or tire rotations. Please go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to re-match the tire pressure.

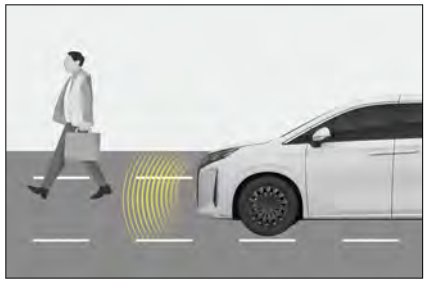
CAUTION

Acoustic Vehicle Alert System (AVAS)*

Function overview

Acoustic vehicle alerting system (AVAS) refers to the alert sound to pedestrians near the vehicle when it is running in EV mode at a low speed.

- When driving forward:
  - The broadcast volume increases with vehicle speed in the range of 0 km/h<V⩽20 km/h.
  - The sound volume decreases with vehicle speed increase in the range of 20 km/h<V⩽30 km/h.
  - At speeds above 30 km/h, the broadcast sound stops automatically.



- The vehicle makes a continuous and balanced sound when reversing.

- When the engine starts, regardless of whether the vehicle is in forward or reverse gear, the alert sound will automatically stop.
- The system is enabled by factory default. The AVAS switch does not retain its state before power disconnection and remains enabled when the vehicle is powered back on.

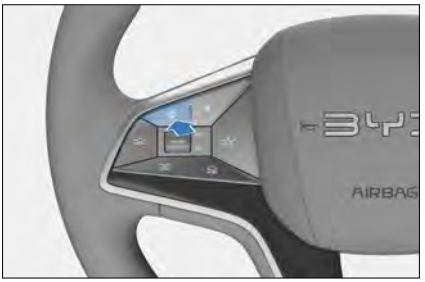
WARNING

- The AVAS pause switch can only be used if there are no other road users within a short distance, and no audio prompt is needed considering the surroundings (for example, in a traffic jam or on the motorway). As long as pedestrians may appear around the vehicle, the AVAS needs to be turned on.
- If the vehicle is running at low speed with AVAS turned off, it is unable to alert pedestrians to the approaching vehicle, which may cause car accidents and even casualties in severe cases.
- If the AVAS sound cannot be heard when driving at a low speed, stop the vehicle in a relatively safe and quiet place, open the window, and then drive at a constant speed of 20 km/h in Drive and check whether the sound can be heard. If it is confirmed that there is no sound, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider to deal with it.

Around View Monitor (AVM)*

The around view monitor (AVM) system, also known as the 360-degree imaging system, provides real-time image (bird's-eye view) by seamlessly stitching images from four wide-angle cameras installed at the front, rear, left, and right sides of the vehicle. This helps the driver understand the surrounding blind spots including areas close to the ground.

- AVM activation method:
  - To access the AVM screen, press the AVM button on the steering wheel.
  - Shifting to Reverse can automatically start the AVM system.
  - AVM can be activated by settings such as triggering by radars.
  - Use voice command to activate AVM if BYD Assistant is enabled.



  - When the gear is in Park or Neutral, or when the vehicle is in Drive and the speed is less than 15 km/h, activate AVM by operating the turn signal lever (the low-speed turn signal activation function is enabled in the settings).
- In the AVM interface, the right is the sidebar, the middle is the top-down stitched image, and the left is the single view or dual view.
  - Click the front, rear, left and right buttons of the vehicle model in the central area to switch the view of the vehicle in four directions.



- Tap the radar icon on the AVM screen to enable the radar display, and tap again to disable it. When the radar display is enabled, a warning is displayed as the vehicle is approaching an obstacle.

- Dual view: Click the button in the far-right sidebar to switch to the dual view of the vehicle.

- Transparent around view: Click on the vehicle model in the central bird' s-eye view stitched image to switch between transparent and non-transparent vehicle model images.

- AVM settings: Configure the following features on the AVM settings interface:
  - Trigger methods: smart view (radar-triggered specific views) and low-speed turn signal activation;
  - Vehicle image: vehicle color.
  - Other tips: restore the default settings.

AVM Icon	Name
	AVM Settings
	Parking radar
	Dual view
	Floating window

WARNING

- AVM system serves as a driver assistance function only, so the driver must be fully responsible for driving safety.
- Do not rely solely on the AVM system while driving, as it may not accurately detect objects or pedestrians in approaching areas. It is necessary to use all the rearview mirrors to make a comprehensive judgment.
- This system uses wide-angle fisheye cameras, so the object on the display screen may appear somewhat deformed in comparison with the actual object.
- The system is only to be used for parking/driving assistance. It is not safe to rely solely on this system to park or drive the vehicle, because there are some blind spots in front of and behind the vehicle. The surroundings of the vehicle should be observed in other ways during the parking/driving process, so as to avoid accidents.
- When the side mirrors are not extended in place, do not use the

WARNING

AVM system; and when the AVM system is used for operating the vehicle, ensure that all doors are closed.

- The distance to an object displayed on the AVM screen may be different from the distance perceived subjectively, especially when the object is closer to the vehicle. Assess the distance in various ways.
- Cameras are installed above the front bumper, the lower parts of the side mirrors, and the rear license plate. Please ensure that the cameras are not blocked.
- To prevent impairing camera performance, avoid spraying directly on the cameras with high-pressure water. Wipe any water or dust off the camera in time.
- Protect the cameras from any impact to prevent damage or malfunction.
- After the vehicle is powered on, if you press the around view button or shift into Reverse while the infotainment system is not fully activated, the output on the around view screen will be delayed or the screen will flash. This is a normal part of the camera power-on process.
- When the vehicle runs at a low speed, the transparent AVM view function is affected by speed fluctuation or multiple stops, so there will be misalignment between the images below the vehicle and that outside the vehicle.

Parking Assist*

- During vehicle parking brake, the parking assist system detects obstacles by sensors, and prompts the driver with the proximity of obstacles by an image on the infotainment touchscreen and a speaker alarm.
- This system aids in reversing, but always remain aware of the surroundings behind and around the vehicle during reversing.
- When you shift into Reverse, the infotainment touchscreen will automatically display a reversing image.
- For your driving safety, when the reversing image is displayed, all buttons will be disabled except some volume and calls-related buttons.
- After reversing ends, the interface will be restored.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle speed is over 10 km/h, the parking assist system will cease to operate.
- Do not place any objects within the sensors' working range.
- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not wash the sensor with water or steam.

Parking Radar Switch

- To enable or disable the reversing radar system, go to infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **ADAS** → **Parking Assist**.
- When the ignition is switched on and EPB is released, the parking assist system is enabled automatically.

- When enabled, the system raises an alarm if obstacles are found around the vehicle; when disabled, it does not.

Sensor Type

- When the sensor detects an obstacle, an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen according to the location of the obstacle and its distance from the vehicle.
- When the driver conducts parallel parking or reverse parking, the sensor measures the distance between the vehicle and the obstacle and communicates this information through the infotainment touchscreen and the speaker. Be aware of the surroundings when using this system.

① Front right sensor

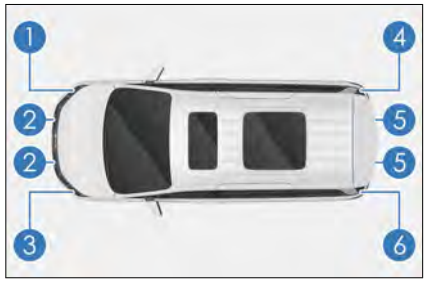
② Front center sensors

③ Front left corner sensor

④ Rear right corner sensor

⑤ Rear center sensors

⑥ Rear left corner sensor



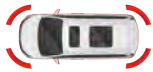
Distance Display and Speaker

When the sensor detects an obstacle, the location of the obstacle and its approximate distance from the vehicle are displayed on the infotainment touchscreen, and the speaker beeps.

Working example of center sensors

Approximate Distance (mm)	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 700 to 1,200		Slow honk
About 300 to 700		Sharp honk
About 0 to 300		Continuous

Working example of corner sensors*

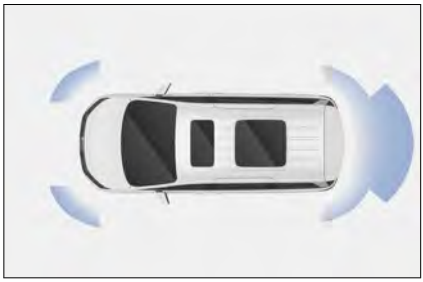
Approximate Distance (mm)	Touchscreen Display Example	Alarm
About 300 to 600		Sharp honk
About 0 to 300		Continuous

WARNING

- The system has a blind spot range of 0–200 mm with reduced detection accuracy and less precise alerts. Alerts within 0–200 mm are for reference only.

Working Sensors and Detection Range

- When shifting from Park to Reverse and from Reverse to Drive, all sensors are operational.
- When shifting from Park to Drive, the front sensors are operational, while the rear sensors are not operational.
- The illustration shows the sensors' detection range. Sensors have a range limitation, so the driver must check the surroundings before slowly reversing the vehicle.



- When only the front sensors are working and the rear sensors are not, the vehicle's front sensor has a maximum alarm distance of 40 cm.

WARNING

- The parking assist system is only used for assistance rather than substitution of your personal judgment.
- Sensors will not work properly if accessories or other objects are placed within their detection range.
- In some cases, the system cannot operate properly and will fail to detect certain objects as the vehicle approaches them. Therefore, be sure to observe the vehicle's surroundings at all times. Do not rely solely upon the system.

- Certain vehicle conditions and surroundings may affect the sensors' ability to accurately detect obstacles. Detection accuracy may be affected if:
  - There is dirt, water or fog, snow or frost on the sensor.
  - The sensor is masked in any way, such as covered with a car wrap.
  - The vehicle leans significantly to one side or is overloaded.

- The vehicle is moving on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel or grass.
- The sensor has been repainted.
- The vicinity is noisy due to honking of vehicles, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other noises that produce ultrasonic waves.
- There's another vehicle with parking assist system nearby.
- The vehicle is fitted with a tow eye.
- The bumper or the sensor was hit hard.
- Bent and deformed license plate.
- The vehicle is approaching a high or zigzag curb.
- The vehicle is driving in the sun or in the cold.
- The vehicle is fitted with non-original suspension.
- The vehicle is speeding.
- There are dynamic obstacles in front of the vehicle (especially lateral ones).

- Except as described above, sensors may not be able to correctly determine the actual distance due to the shape of the object. The shape and material of obstacles may prevent sensors from detecting them including
  - Electric wires, fences, and ropes
  - Cotton, snow, and other materials that absorb ultrasound.
  - Objects with sharp edges, cylindrical objects, or the corners of walls
  - Smooth-surfaced objects.
  - Low obstacles.
  - Overhanging obstacles.
  - Any object under the bumper.
  - Any object close to the vehicle.
  - Persons near the vehicle (depending on the type of clothing).
- If an image is displayed on the infotainment touchscreen or there is a beep, it may be that the sensor detects an obstacle or is interfered. If there are no obstacles nearby and the alarm persists, it is recommended to have the vehicle inspected at an authorized BYD service center.

CAUTION

- To prevent sensor malfunction, do not rinse or apply steam to the sensor area.

Driving Safety Systems

For better driving safety, the following driving safety systems works automatically based on driving conditions. However, these systems only provide assistance, and excessive reliance on them is not recommended.

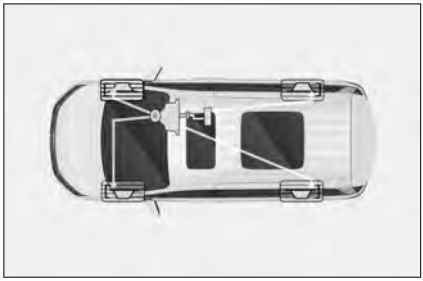
Intelligent Power Braking System

- The intelligent power braking system is an advanced decoupled electro-hydraulic brake system, incorporating vacuum booster, electronic vacuum pump, Antilock Braking System (ABS), Electronic Stability Controller (ESC) system, and other features.
- The system assists vehicle braking according to the driver's demands. It offers advanced control functions such as anti-lock braking system (ABS), electronic brake force distribution (EBD), traction control system (TCS), vehicle dynamic control (VDC), adaptive cruise control (ACC), automatic emergency braking (AEB),

comfort stop (CST), cooperative regenerative brake systems (CRBS) to improve vehicle stability and comfort, and the recovery efficiency of brake energy.

Anti-lock Braking System

- The ABS hydraulic system has two separate circuits, each running diagonally through the vehicle (the right front wheel brake connected to the left rear wheel brake). If one circuit fails, two wheels can still be braked.
- ABS helps maintain the steering control by preventing the wheels from locking when brake is engaged suddenly or on slippery roads.



- When the ABS is working, the ESC indicator will flash and the brake pedal will vibrate, which may produce noise. This is normal because ABS is pulsating the brake quickly. In this situation, you should press and hold the brake pedal instead of pumping the brakes. This allows ABS to function as designed. While steering away from danger, a firm and steady pressure should always be maintained on the brake pedal for the ABS to work.

WARNING

- ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:
  - Tires with inadequate grip are used (for example, excessively worn tires used on snow-covered roads).
  - The vehicle skids when driving at a high speed on slippery roads.
- ABS is not designed to reduce the braking distance of the vehicle. Always keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead when:
  - Driving on slippery, muddy, sandy or snowy roads.
  - Driving on roads with multiple potholes or on uneven roads.
  - Driving on bumpy roads.

CAUTION

- If the ABS warning light remains on while the brake warning light is on, immediately stop the vehicle at a safe place and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- In this case, if brakes are applied, the ABS will not work and the vehicle will become extremely unstable.
- ABS does not reduce the time and distance required to stop the vehicle. This system only helps you control steering when braking. Please always keep a safe distance from other vehicles.
- ABS does not prevent decrease in stability. When applying the brake in an emergency, the steering should be moderate. A large or sharp turn during the driving can cause the vehicle to swerve into oncoming traffic or run off the road.

CAUTION

- ABS cannot prevent skidding caused by sudden direction change, such as trying to make a sharp turn or change lanes suddenly. Always drive carefully at a safe speed, regardless of road and weather conditions.
- When driving on wet or soft or uneven roads (such as waterlogged concrete roads, waterlogged epoxy painted roads, sandy roads, snowy roads), vehicles equipped with ABS may require longer braking distances than vehicles without ABS. In such cases, reduce the vehicle speed and keep a greater distance from other vehicles.

Vehicle Dynamics Control (VDC)

- When the vehicle turns suddenly while running, the VDC system determines the driver's intention based on such information as steering wheel's angle and vehicle speed, and continuously compares with the actual condition. If the vehicle swerves from the normal lane, the VDC corrects the situation by engaging brakes to the corresponding wheels to help the driver control skidding and maintain directional stability.

Traction Control System (TCS)

- TCS prevents the drive wheels from skidding during acceleration by reducing the engine power, and, when necessary, applies braking forces to prevent drive wheels from idling. It makes it easy for the vehicle to start, accelerate, and climb under adverse driving conditions.

WARNING

- TCS may not work effectively in the following situations:
  - On slippery roads, even if TCS is working properly, it may not be able to control the direction and meet power requirements.
  - Do not drive in conditions where the vehicle may lose its stability and power.

Hill Hold Control (HHC)

- After the brake pedal is released, HHC maintains brake pressure for one second to prevent backward sliding.

Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)

- When you press the brake pedal quickly, HBA detects that the vehicle is in emergency condition. It quickly increases the brake pressure to the maximum so that ABS can intervene more quickly and shorten the braking distance effectively.

Controller Deceleration Parking(CDP)

- When you engage the EPB, the CDP function starts working so that the vehicle brakes at a constant deceleration (0.4 g if EPB is engaged but the brake pedal is not pressed, and 0.8 g if EPB is engaged and the brake pedal is pressed) until the vehicle stops. The function stops working when the EPB is released.

Hill Descent Control(HDC)

- Working principle: HDC is a value-added function of the ESC system to improve vehicle comfort. To turn on or off the HDC function, go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Intelligent Assist** setting interface. The main function of HDC is to assist in downhill slow driving through active braking. When HDC is

working, ABS is activated when the wheel slip exceeds the ABS triggering threshold, allowing you to safely and smoothly go downhill, or even reverse.

- Activate HDC:
  - When the speed is below 38 km/h, you can also enable HDC on the infotainment touchscreen. When the function is enabled, its status indicator on the instrument cluster is steady on.
- HDC speed control:
  - HDC works at speeds between 11 km/h and 38 km/h, within which you can adjust the speed by pressing/releasing the accelerator or brake pedal. The vehicle speed is set when the accelerator or brake pedal is released. The HDC status indicator flashes to indicate that the HDC is working.
- Deactivating HDC:
  - Press the HDC switch again to disable the function, and the indicator turns off.
  - HDC also automatically stops when the speed exceeds about 65 km/h.
- HDC malfunction:
  - In some special cases such as long downhill, the HDC function may be temporarily disabled due to the high temperature of the brake.
  - A "Please check the HDC system" message is displayed for safety. To restore the function, stop the vehicle until the brake temperature cools down.

Intelligent power braking system has the following new features compared with the ESC system:

- Brake assist mode
  - The brake assist mode is used to adjust the brake pedal feel. The relation curve between the brake pedal depth and the vehicle deceleration varies across different modes for the driver to choose their preferred pedal feel.
  - You can set Comfort or Sport pedal feel through the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**, or **Application center** → **Disus** App* → **Brake assist mode**.
- Comfort parking*
  - Comfort parking: When the vehicle decelerates to stop in a non-emergency situation, the integrated brake control system reduces the stop-instant suspension pitch and impact by controlling the brake pressure of the four brakes, providing a smooth stop feeling for the driver.
  - Enable or disable comfort parking in the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Drive** → **Driving Control**.
  - After the function is triggered, the braking distance may increase by 2-5 cm. Increase the distance from the vehicle or obstacle ahead accordingly before stopping your vehicle.
- Comfort control*
  - Comfort control During vehicle acceleration and deceleration, load transfer induces pitch motion. This pitch motion is suppressed through coordinated control of electronic suspension damping and brake pressure at the end of the braking cycle, thereby enhancing ride comfort.
  - Users can select three comfort control modes of "weak", "moderate" or "strong" on the infotainment

touchscreen → **Application center** → **Disus** App*.

- Brake disc wiping
  - Brake disc wiping function: When the wiper switch is on or the rain sensor detects rain, the integrated brake control system applies a small brake pressure to all four brakes so that pads come into contact with discs to remove the water film from the discs. This shortens brake response time and braking distance.
  - As long as the system detects rain or the wiper ON signal, the brake discs are repeatedly wiped at certain intervals to improve safety.

ESC operation instructions

- ESC working
  - If there is a risk of skidding or backsliding when the vehicle starts on a slope, or if either drive wheel is spinning, the ESC indicator flashes to indicate that ESC system is working.
- Disabling ESC
  - If the vehicle gets stuck in snow or mud, ESC may reduce power output from the engine to the wheels. In this case, you may need to turn off the system to get out of the jam.
- Turning off ESC
  - To turn off the ESC system, tap the infotainment touchscreen → → **Drive** → **Driving Control** → **ESC OFF**. ESC also checks its operating status in real time. If you turn off ESC while it is working, it completes the active intervention control rather than executes the shutdown command immediately. ESC is disabled only after the intervention control is complete.
  - After ESC is turned off, some of its deactivated functions will resume if either the ESC OFF button is pressed again or the vehicle speed exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h. In order to prevent ESC from being turned off suddenly, ESC can be activated again only when it is not in a vehicle dynamic intervention state.
- Restarting ESC
  - If the ESC system is off before the vehicle is shut down, it will automatically be restarted the next time the vehicle is powered back on.
- ESC start and speed linkage
  - Although already turned off, the ESC system can start on its own if the vehicle becomes extremely unstable as the speed increases and exceeds the threshold of 80 km/h.
- With ESC system activated
  - If the ESC fault indicator flashes, drive with caution.
- With ESC system disabled
  - Be careful when ESC is disabled, and drive at speeds suitable for road conditions. The ESC system ensures vehicle stability and its driving force. Never turn it off unless necessary.
- Replacing tires
  - Make sure all tires are of the same size, brand, tread pattern, and total load. In addition, be sure to inflate tires to the recommended pressure.
  - Neither ABS nor ESC will work properly if the vehicle is fitted with different tires.
  - For details on tire or wheel replacement, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- Tire and suspension handling

- The use of any defective tire or modified suspension affects the driving safety system and may cause the system to fail.

Multi-Collision Brake (MCB)

- If an accident requires airbags activation, the vehicle engages automatic braking.
- Speed reduction, along with intervention by additional driving systems (ESC and ABS), assists the vehicle to maintain stability and lane position.
- Hazard and brake lights will activate to alert oncoming traffic and prevent further collisions.
- To support emergency service rescue and vehicle recovery, brakes will release and brake lights will turn off after the accident.
- The driver can interrupt the multi-collision braking at any time by accelerating or braking.

Child Presence Detection (CPD)

After the vehicle is powered off and the doors are closed or locked, child presence detection (CDP), as an auxiliary reminder function, is performed to detects life presence inside the vehicle. If life presence is detected, a reminder is given in the form of light flashing and honking. The A/C will be switched on soon after. Open any door to cancel the reminder.

How to Use

- To access the CPD setting interface, go to infotainment touchscreen → **Vehicle** → **Cabin Perception**. Four options are provided: OFF, ON, Standard, and Delay.
- By default, CPD is enabled with Standard mode each time when the vehicle is powered on;
- In power-off state, the vehicle retains user settings for 28 days
- OFF: CPD function is disabled.
- Tap Delay to delay the alarm for 5 minutes in this trip.

Activation conditions

- CPD is activated when all the following conditions are met:
  - The vehicle is powered off.
  - When the vehicle is stationary, the driver's door is opened and then closed.
  - All doors are closed.
  - CPD is enabled on the infotainment touchscreen.
  - CPD system has no fault.

System Response

Initial alarm

- When CPD is enabled with standard alert mode, If life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off and locked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 15 seconds and will last for about 6 seconds.
- When CPD is enabled with standard alert mode, if life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off but unlocked, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts within 5 minutes and will last for about 6 seconds.
- When CPD enabled with delay alarm mode, if life presence is detected after the vehicle is powered off and the doors are closed, the initial alarm (light flashing and honking) starts

within 5 minutes and will last for about 6 seconds.

Escalated alarm

- If the alarm is not canceled, the alarm will be upgraded in 80 seconds (light flashing and honking) and will last for 25 minutes.

Other system responses

- The A/C will be switched on three minutes after alarm escalation, and will keep running for about 30 minutes.

Alarm canceling

- When alarm is triggered, unlock or open any door or press the prompt button on the infotainment touchscreen. to cancel the alarm.
- Temporarily cancel the current reminder by pressing the prompt button on the infotainment touchscreen. If the door is not opened promptly and the system continues to detect a living being inside the vehicle, an alarm will reactivate after 80 seconds.

Notifications

- The user will receive messages in the BYD App and email of every initial alarm, escalated alarm and other system responses.

WARNING

- The system notifies users with light flashing, honking, App message prompts, message, and A/C operation to reduce the harm to the presence in the vehicle. However, CPD is only an auxiliary system and cannot ensure effective recognition and alarm-raising in all situations. The user must remain alarm at all times and fully responsible for the lives in the vehicle.

WARNING

- When a reminder is provided, check whether any life presence has been locked inside the vehicle promptly to avoid further safety incident.

CAUTION

- When the CPD is disabled, the system ceases operation. If lives remain in the vehicle, the system will not initiate an alert. Users are advised to exercise caution when disabling this feature.
- The alarm may be given for adults, pets, or other lives detected.
- The alarm may be given for moving objects detected.
- The alarm cannot be canceled by unlocking the vehicle remotely from the app.
- The system may not be able to trigger an escalated alarm or switch on the A/C if the SOC is low. Keeping the vehicle at high SOC is recommended.

05 IN-VEHICLE DEVICES

Infotainment System..... 186
A/C System..... 201
BYD App*..... 207
Refrigerator*..... 208
Storage..... 212
Other Devices..... 215

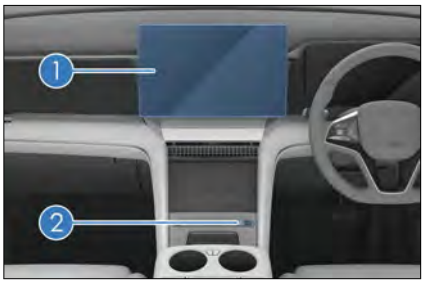
Infotainment System

Infotainment Touchscreen

When the ignition is on, the initial screen is displayed for several seconds and the infotainment system starts to work. To better experience infotainment functions, such as apps and Internet calls, the system must be used after network connection.

① Infotainment touchscreen

② Scroll button



- Scroll up to turn volume up or down to turn volume down. Volume ranges from 0 to 39. A mute icon is displayed when volume is 0.
- With the infotainment system on, press the scroll button to mute the audio.
- Set the screen mode and brightness on the infotainment touchscreen → → **Audio&Display** → **Screen**.
- Press and hold the scroll button for three seconds to restart the infotainment system.

Reset to factory settings

- The infotainment system can be reset to the factory settings by tapping the infotainment touchscreen → **Application center** → → **System** → **Reset options** → Erase all data.
- This function factory resets the infotainment system.
  - During the process, do not touch any infotainment button or turn off the power supply, or errors may occur.
  - The process takes two to five minutes.

WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the touchscreen:
  - Touch the screen gently. If there is no response, remove fingers from the screen, then touch it again.
  - Clean the screen with a soft cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- Using the touchscreen
  - When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
  - The screen may be dark or difficult to see when you are wearing sunglasses. In that case, change the viewing angle or take off the sunglasses.
  - Touchscreen buttons that are grayed out cannot be operated.

CAUTION

- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.

Infotainment System Screen

- A warning is displayed when the infotainment system starts for the first time. Tap Agree to enter the system.
- After the system starts, the home screen is displayed automatically. The home screen consists of status bar, navigation bar, and desktop widgets.
- Top status bar:

  The top status bar displays various status icons.

  These icons fall into two categories: interactive icons* that can be tapped to perform specific functions and status-only icons that display related information.
- Shortcut menu:

  Swipe down from the top of the touchscreen to open the shortcut menu. The shortcut menu includes modules for quick operations, brightness and volume adjustments, and scenario modes*.
- Navigation bar:

  Press and hold the navigation bar to bring up the control menu and applications. You can customize the navigation bar according to your needs.

  - : returns to the previous screen or exits the program.
  - : returns to the homepage.
  - : goes to the vehicle setting screen.
  - : goes to the app list screen.
- Task management center

  Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen opens the task management center.
- Desktop widget

  The default desktop layout displays pre-installed widgets. You can add, remove, or reposition widgets based on your preferences.

REMINDER

- The desktop widgets on your actual vehicle may differ.

- Application center

  This interface displays a list of apps and recently used applications. Use voice command to open applications. Start an application by clicking the icon.

Settings

To access the setting interface, go to the infotainment touchscreen → Application center → → , which includes: Bluetooth, Network & internet, Notifications, Profiles and accounts, Location, Privacy, Accessibility, Security, Apps, Assistant & voice, System, and Google Account:

- Bluetooth: manages Bluetooth device pairing and connections, supporting wireless audio transmission and peripheral control.
- Network & Internet: Configure Wi-Fi, mobile data, VPN, and hotspot sharing to optimize network connection status.

- Notifications: customize notification priority, display style, and Do Not Disturb mode for individual apps.
- Profiles & accounts: sync or remove account data, and manage cross-device sign-ins and cloud service permissions.
- Location: control app location permissions and view recent location access history.
- Privacy: manage app permissions, ad preferences, and access records for sensitive data such as the camera and microphone.
- Accessibility: enable assistive features such as screen readers, captions, and magnification to support special accessibility needs.
- Security: set profile lock types, enable Google Play Protect, and manage emergency security responses.
- Apps: view app storage usage, permission status, and default app settings.
- Assistant & voice: Adjust Google Assistant wake words, voice match, and smart home integration.
- System: perform system update, backup and restore operations, multi-device connectivity, and system-level power-saving strategies.
- Google Account: manage account-linked Google services such as Search, Maps, and Ads.

Trademark statement

- Google, Android, Google Play, and Google Maps are trademarks of Google LLC.

Scenario Mode*

Nap Mode*

- Mode activated: When you needs a short rest, enable the nap mode by accessing the scenario mode options on the drop-dwon shortcut menu or through voice commands. To activate the mode, set the duration and then confirm. To exit the mode, tap "End Now".
- Alarm settings: There will be an alarm at the end of the nap time. Tap "Cancel" to end it. If the user does not have any operation, the alarm will delay for a period of time by default and ring again when the time is up.
- Mode effect: In the nap mode, the driver's seat is automatically lowered to the default position, the A/C is turned on, the vehicle is locked, and systems such as the windows and the sunroof are automatically closed. The infotainment touchscreen displays the nap mode interface, the instrument cluster screen, and other screens go off.

CAUTION

- Before activating the nap mode, make sure the OK indicator stays on and the vehicle is in Park.
- Before entering the nap mode, close all doors and the trunk.
- Before entering the nap mode, check the vehicle remaining driving range to avoid inconvenience.
- After safely parking the vehicle, check the area under the vehicle to avoid the exhaust pipe igniting flammable materials such as dry

CAUTION

grass, fallen leaves, or wheat straws.

- Do not turn on nap mode in a poorly ventilated environment.
- Do not take a nap in the vehicle while it is being charged or discharged.
- To prevent rear passengers from being pinched or items from being damaged, ensure that no passengers and items are on the rear seats before you take a nap.
- The vehicle will automatically exit the nap mode in some cases, such as when the vehicle is not in Park or is powered off, which is normal.

Camping Mode*

- Mode activated: When you need camp outdoors, enable the camping mode by accessing the scenario mode options on the drop-dwon shortcut menu or through voice commands.
- Alarm settings: Users can set the alarm clock in the camping mode. When the set time is up, the alarm clock will remind the user. Tap "Turn Off Alarm" to end the alarm. If the user does not have any operation, the alarm clock will extend a period of camping time by default, and will remind again when the time is up.
- Mode effect: After entering the camping mode, the air conditioner turns on, the windows, sunroof and sunshade turn off, the central infotainment touchscreen plays the dynamic camping effect selected by the user, and other in-vehicle screens will be turned off. At the same time, the vehicle automatically adjusts to a level posture. After the user locks the vehicle, the lights automatically turn off.

CAUTION

- Before activating the camping mode, make sure the OK indicator stays on and the vehicle is in Park.
- Before entering the camping mode, check the vehicle remaining driving range to avoid inconvenience.
- After safely parking the vehicle, check the area under the vehicle to avoid the exhaust pipe igniting flammable materials such as dry grass, fallen leaves, or wheat straws.
- Do not turn on camping mode in a poorly ventilated environment.
- Do not camp in the vehicle while it is being charged or discharged.
- The vehicle may automatically exit camping mode under certain conditions, such as air conditioning failure, low battery, or power-off. These scenarios are normal.

Gestures and Responses

Gestures and associated system responses are:

- Tapping: opens applications, selects functions, clicks icons on the touchscreen, or types characters.
- Dragging: touching and dragging an icon, thumbnail, or preview to the target position to change its location.
- Swiping: operational on homepage and app screens.

- Double-tapping: zooms in an image or shows full screen. Double-tap again to return.
- Spreading/pinching: zooms in or out an image with two fingers.
- Swiping left/right on the touchscreen with three fingers: regulates A/C fan speed.
- Swiping up/down on the touchscreen with three fingers: regulates A/C temperature.
- Swiping down from the top of the touchscreen: opens the shortcut menu.
- Swiping up from the bottom of the touchscreen: opens the task management center.
- Sliding from the left/right of the touchscreen: returns to the last screen.

OTA Updates*

- The vehicle supports over-the-air (OTA) updates. When available, new updates are prompted on the infotainment touchscreen. You can update your software to the latest immediately or schedule an update through infotainment touchscreen or BYD App based on your vehicle usage.
  - To update through infotainment touchscreen, To access the software updating, tap the infotainment touchscreen → **Application center** → → **System** → **Vehicle version**.
  - To update through BYD App, To access the phone software updating, tap the **BYD** App → **App homepage** → **More Functions** → **OTA Upgrading**.

CAUTION

- Before the update, ensure that the vehicle is parked safely in Park gear with a stable network connection.
- Make sure the vehicle has enough battery power before the update, as it cannot be charged or discharged during the process.
- Do not install any third-party devices in the on-board diagnostics port before or during the update.
- During the OTA upgrade, all functions are not available except the unlocking/locking, interior lights, hazard warning light, and window controls.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, try it again. If it continues to fails, contact the official customer service or a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for handling.
- If the OTA upgrade fails, and the fault warning lights such as the parking system fault warning light, ABS fault warning light and ESC fault warning light are on at the same time, Do not drive the vehicle and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider as soon as possible to check the vehicle status.

REMINDER

- Upgrade paths may vary from the actual ones on the infotainment touchscreen and App. The actual paths shall prevail.
- Some functions may change after OTA update. Check the

REMINDER

latest version number for update descriptions.

Voice Assistant

The vehicle is equipped with Google Assistant, which uses natural language processing technology to allow intuitive and convenient control. It supports various entertainment interactions such as music and podcasts.

- When Google Assistant is set as the default voice assistant, you can activate it in three ways:
  - By saying the wake words "Hey Google".
  - By briefly pressing the steering wheel voice button.
  - By tapping the Google Assistant app icon.
- You can ask Google Assistant general questions, such as "What's on my calendar?", or interact with it to access communication, media, navigation, and vehicle control functions, such as "Read my messages", "Play some music", "Navigate to Starbucks", "Turn on the heater". Once a command is recognized, the system executes the corresponding action.
- If Google Assistant is not set as the default voice assistant, wake words and the steering wheel button cannot be used to activate it. In this case, you can either press and hold the voice icon or navigate to infotainment touchscreen → **Application center** → → **Digital assistant app** → **Default digital assistant app** to select the preferred default assistant.

BYD Assistant*

- BYD Assistant is an intelligent voice assistant that responds to your voice commands, such as requesting navigation, playing music/ radio making phone calls, and controlling in-vehicle devices.
- When BYD Assistant is set as the default voice assistant, you can activate it by saying the wake word "Hi, BYD", by briefly pressing the voice button on the steering wheel, or by tapping the voice icon on the infotainment touchscreen.
- Your voice command will then be recognized Then you can give voice commands such as "Go home" (set a quick location first), "Play music", "Make a call (requires access to the contact list and connection to the phone via Bluetooth)", "Set the temperature to 23 degrees". Once a command is recognized, the system executes the corresponding action.
- If BYD assistant is not set as the default voice assistant, wake words and the steering wheel button cannot be used to activate it. In this case, you can either press and hold the voice icon or navigate to infotainment touchscreen → **Application center** → → **Digital assistant app** → **Default digital assistant app** to select the preferred default assistant.

Bluetooth Call

Connection

1. On Bluetooth Call screen, tap **Please connect Bluetooth** to establish connection.
2. Tap **Scan for device** to search for available devices.

3. Pair the available device, and make sure the paring code displayed on your phone is consistent with the code on the touchscreen.
4. Set Bluetooth when connection is complete.

Bluetooth call

Go to the dialing screen when Bluetooth is connected.

- Tap **Contacts**, **Call log**, and **Missed calls**, or use dial keypad to make a call.
- Slide the call card upwards or tap any empty space to minimize the dialing screen.
- In panoramic view screen, a small window pops up to inform driver of a call.

Audio*

- Go to the infotainment touchscreen → ⚙ → **Audio&Display** → **Audio** to adjust the audio settings.
- The audio settings include sound field focus*, sound feature*, volume adjusted with speed and volume adjustment. Choose the following methods according to the actual configuration of your vehicle.

Sound field focus*

- The sound field focus feature includes the entire vehicle, driver's seat, rear row, and custom. The entire vehicle is set by default.

Sound feature*

- The sound includes four modes: classic, rhythmic, gentle, and custom. Classic is set by default.

Volume adjusted with speed*

- Based on the "acoustic masking" effect, combined with the DiSound audio algorithm, it effectively masks vehicle noise, enabling occupants to enjoy music in various scenarios. It can be set to low, medium, high, and off, with the default level set to high.

Volume adjustment

- Adjust media volume, navigation volume, voice volume, and ring volume.

My Car*

My Car* can provide vehicle control functionality

- Vehicle control consists of shortcut control and 3D vehicle model control*.
  - Shortcut control: Operate vehicle functions via the right shortcut bar or the bottom card shortcut, enabling one-tap control.
  - 3D vehicle model control: Tap hotspot areas on the vehicle model to operate vehicle functions, It controls sunshade, windows, and the trunk lid, etc.
  - Custom body Color: Switch the body color by tapping the corresponding icon.
  - Vehicle control customization: Press More to view all shortcut functions, and press and hold the function icon to adjust its position.

REMINDER

- The availability of applications depends on the vehicle's actual configuration.

Other Applications

Map*

- The map supports location, search, route planning, turn-by-turn navigation, and group navigation.
- Most interactive controls are on the right side of the map for searching for charging piles, parking lots, and other interested places easily.

External Applications

This infotainment system is an Android-based system and supports the installation of external apps.

- Installing external apps:
  1. Download the desired app.
  2. Tap the app file, select Allow app installation from external sources to proceed with the installation.
  3. After installation, the app appear in the app list. Tap to use it.

CAUTION

- It is recommended to prioritize installing applications from the official app store.
- Third-party applications not compatible with the vehicle's infotainment system may cause performance issues such as lag or incompatibility during use. Installing and using these applications with caution.
- It is recommended to install officially certified applications. Unofficial or uncertified applications may infringe upon the issuer's intellectual property rights, potentially harm your personal interests, or result in functional failures. Installing and using such softwares with caution.
- Installing a lot of unnecessary software may make the system

CAUTION

lag or unusable. Installing external apps with cautions.

- Any malfunctions, failures, or other abnormal conditions in this system and its associated functions and services caused by self-installed third-party applications shall result in liability and consequences borne by the user.

- Uninstalling external apps:
  1. The installed apps could be seen on the infotainment touchscreen → **Application center** → →**Apps**, and you can select the app to uninstall.
  2. Tap "Uninstall" and confirm.

CAUTION

- Default apps preinstalled on this infotainment system cannot be uninstalled.

Phone Projection*

Phone projection allows you to connect a smartphone to the vehicle and interact with certain mobile apps on the infotainment touchscreen.

WARNING

- Drive safely. Avoid any possible distractions, or accidents could result.

REMINDER

- Make sure the vehicle is in Park with the infotainment system

REMINDER

turned on, and allow time to set up the phone projection app before you start your drive.

- The initial setup process is to be completed on the phone or the infotainment touchscreen: check prompts on the phone for security information, accept privacy policies, and grant necessary permissions.
- Wired connections require a connection between a certified USB cable to the USB data transfer port on the vehicle.
- When connecting wirelessly, pair your phone and the vehicle via Bluetooth. It is better to keep your phone's Bluetooth, Wi-Fi, and Location Services turned on in this process.
- For the connection to be stable, it is better to change the vehicle hotspot name to avoid name-related issues.
- Ensure your phone is in range of your mobile data network and has an active data plan.
- Availability of services shown varies by country and language, and subscriptions for services may be required.
- Network interference may result in unstable wireless connections.

Apple CarPlay

Connecting with a cable

- **To activate the connection,** plug an iPhone to a USB data transfer port on the vehicle with a certified USB cable. Apple CarPlay is then connected. The phone projected is shown on the device list.
- **To deactivate the connection,** unplug the USB cable to stop Apple CarPlay.

Connecting wirelessly

- **To activate the connection,** do as follows.
  1. On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Apple CarPlay icon , and pair your iPhone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Apple CarPlay.
- **To deactivate the connection,** choose any of the following ways.
  - On the vehicle, turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Delete or disconnect the projected device from the vehicle's connected device list.
  - Delete the projected device from the vehicle Bluetooth list.
  - Connect the Bluetooth of the projected device.

Reconnecting Apple CarPlay

- Unplug and replug the USB cable to reconnect in a wired manner.
- Tap Apple CarPlay app to reactivate it wirelessly.

Switching between Apple CarPlay and built-in infotainment system

- To exit the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the BYD icon on Apple CarPlay's home screen.
- To access the Apple CarPlay user interface, tap the Apple CarPlay icon on the built-in infotainment system's application screen.

Switching between devices

- On the vehicle infotainment touchscreen, tap the connected device icon on the shortcut menu to access the connected device list.
- By using the list, you can only switch to a wireless device. This means you get a prompt if selecting another wireless device, but you will need to unplug and replug the USB cable to switch to a wired device.
- While a phone is already being projected, plugging in another phone also triggers the switching prompt.

Possible issues

- **Checking your phone**
  - Apple CarPlay may often freeze on older iPhone models or earlier iOS versions.
  - A smooth cellular network is necessary. Sluggish network connections could cause apps to lag.
- **How can I check the connection between my phone and the vehicle**
  - For wired connections, be sure to use the data transfer port, and preferably a MFi-certified or genuine iPhone cable.
  - For wireless connections, verify your phone settings:
    - Both Bluetooth and Wi-Fi have been turned on.
    - Wireless Carplay has been selected at the very first Apple CarPlay connection. In case you do not know, navigate on your iPhone to Settings → General → Carplay, select the vehicle you want to reset, then tap Forget This Car. Delete your iPhone from the device list on the vehicle. Then reset Apple CarPlay.
    - The name of the vehicle's Bluetooth or hotspot must be unique.
    - Make sure Siri is on.
    - Make sure Apple CarPlay is not restricted.

      If your iPhone is not detected by Apple CarPlay, navigate on the phone to **Settings** → **Screen Time** → **Content & Privacy Restrictions**. If **Content & Privacy Restrictions** is on, tap **Allowed Apps & Features** to make sure that Apple CarPlay is enabled.
    - If the wireless connection fails after you end a wired connection by unplugging the USB cable, clear CarPlay device information on your iPhone or restart the phone.
- Visit Apple website for a list of countries or regions in which Apple CarPlay is available.

Android Auto

Connecting with a cable

- **To activate the connection,** plug an Android Auto-compatible phone to one of the vehicle's USB data transfer port with a certified USB cable and set up as prompted.
- **To deactivate the connection,** unplug the USB cable to stop Android Auto.

Connecting wirelessly

- **To activate the connection,** do as follows.

  1. On the infotainment touchscreen, tap the Android Auto icon , and pair your smartphone to the vehicle as prompted.
  2. After that, follow on-screen instructions to connect Android Auto.

- **To deactivate the connection,** choose any of the following ways.
  - Turn off the vehicle hotspot.
  - Delete or disconnect the projected device from the vehicle's connected device list.
  - Delete the projected device from the vehicle Bluetooth list.

Reconnecting Apple CarPlay

- Unplug and replug the USB cable to reconnect in a wired manner.
- Re-pair Bluetooth or tap the Android Auto app to reactivate it wirelessly.

Switching between Android Auto and built-in infotainment system

- To exit from Android Auto, tap on Android Auto interface.
- To go back to Android Auto, tap the Android Auto icon on the built-in infotainment system's application screen.

Switching between devices

- By using the list, you can only switch to a wireless device. This means you get a prompt if selecting another wireless device, but you will need to unplug and replug the USB cable to switch to a wired device.
- While a phone is already being projected, plugging in another phone also triggers the switching prompt.

Possible issues

- **Android Auto not working**
  - Make sure your phone supports Google service.
  - Verify that your phones has the latest version of Android Auto app.
    - To use Android Auto on the vehicle's infotainment system, you need a compatible Android smartphone. You can check the list of compatible smartphones and countries or regions supported at Google website.
  - Check if the connection between your phone and the vehicle is working normally.
    - For wired connections, use a qualified USB cable to connect the phone and the data transfer port on the vehicle.
    - For wireless connections, make sure Bluetooth and Wi-Fi are enabled on your phone and so do the vehicle Bluetooth and hotspot.
- **What should I do if Android Auto cannot be reconnected?**

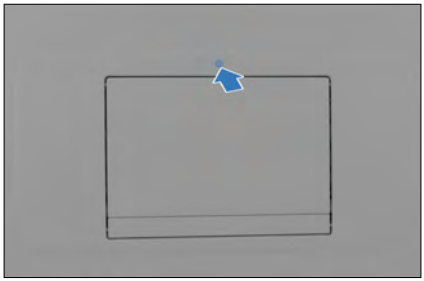
  Try the following steps:
  - If you are using a wired reconnection, change to a genuine USB cable of the phone.
  - For wireless Android Auto, before re-repairing, delete the phone from the vehicle's device list and forget previously connected devices on the phone: On your Android phone, navigate to or search for Android Auto in Settings Tap Previously connected cars, then the three-dot menu button in the upper right corner, and select Forget all cars ” 。

Trademark statement

- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Android and Android Auto are trademarks of Google LLC.

In-Vehicle Cinema System*

- The in-vehicle cinema system provides video, audio, and other entertainment functions. It also supports wired projection.
- The multimedia can be played through the vehicle or Bluetooth headset. Pull down the shortcut menu to set.
- The in-vehicle cinema screen is located on the rear roof between the driver and front passenger seats. The power button is located on the front of the screen.



- Press and hold the power button for 6 seconds to exit and restart the in-vehicle cinema system.
- When the vehicle is powered off, the screen automatically reset to its initial position (0°).
- When the screen is folded and powered off, the screen unfold function is triggered to turn the screen to the default angle.
- When the screen is unfolded and powered on, the screen fold function is triggered to turn off the screen and folding it back to 0°.
- Screen unfold and fold triggers:
  - Press the power button of the in-vehicle cinema screen briefly.
  - Press the power button on the remote control.
  - Press the power button of the second-row seat control panel screen.
  - Go to the application interface on the rear screen center.
  - Pull down the shortcut menu and select Folding Screen option.
- Screen angle adjustment methods:
  - Adjust the screen angle using the angle adjustment buttons on the remote control.
  - On the pull-down shortcut menu, slide the angle adjustment bar and release to set the screen to the adjusted angle.

WARNING

- During screen rotation, do not touch the screen or place fingers/body parts near the moving mechanism to avoid pinching and personal injury.
- During screen rotation, do not place foreign objects near the moving mechanism to prevent bumps and equipment damage.
- If a part replacement is required for the screen service, power off the vehicle before replacement.

CAUTION

- Do not manually force the screen, as this may damage components or cause malfunctions.
- If the anti-pinching function is triggered, the screen will reverse to the default position. This is normal.

CAUTION

- Fold the screen when it is not in use to prevent collisions and damage.

In-Vehicle Cinema System Interface

WARNING

- Do not use a high-power inverter in the vehicle, as this may cause infotainment system malfunction.
- Do not format or root the device, as this may cause infotainment system or vehicle malfunction.

CAUTION

- Touch the screen gently to avoid screen damage. If there is no response, remove fingers from the screen, then touch it again.
- Clean the screen with a soft cloth. Do not use any cleaning product.
- When the screen temperature is low, the image displayed may be darker or the system may work slightly slower than normal.
- On first startup, a warning page will appear. Read carefully and confirm to access the system interface.
- The touchscreen interface shown here is for reference only.

Desktop

- When the in-vehicle cinema is turned on, the desktop is displayed by default, which includes modules such as status bar and navigation bar.
- Frequently used apps are in navigation bar. Tap the icon to use an app.

Application center

- App list is shown in application center. Tap the icon to use an app.

REMINDER

- When the infotainment system malfunctions, upload the fault information in "Practical Tools".
- The loaded application is subject to the actual configuration of the vehicle.

Shortcut menu

- Swipe down from the screen top to access the shortcut menu. Tap these buttons to adjust volume and brightness, access specific function interface, or directly enable specific functions.

Bluetooth

- Supports connecting Bluetooth headset and HID devices.
- Turn on the vehicle Bluetooth, search for device and connect it.

Remote Control*

- The remote control is stored in the seatback pocket behind the front seat. It can be used to control and operate the display screen.



- The remote control supports two modes: TV focus navigation and cursor control.



TV focus navigation instructions

Icon	Description	Function
⮌	Back	Press to return to the previous screen.
⌂	Homepage	Press to access the main menu.
☰	Menu	Press to display more functions.
⏻	Power	Press to turn on/off the top-mounted screen.
+	Volume +	Press to increase volume.
—	Volume -	Press to decrease volume.
▱	Screen angle adjustment	Press to adjust screen angle.

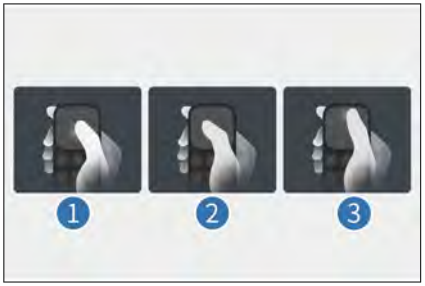
Cursor control instructions

① To confirm: Press the touchpad.

② To move the cursor: Swipe on the touchpad.

③ To swipe left/right or up/down:

- To swipe left/right: Swipe left/right on the upper part of the touchpad.
- To swipe up/down: Swipe up/down on the lower part of the touchpad.



Pairing method

- On the first startup of the in-vehicle cinema screen, keep the remote control within 10 meters. Press the Home and Volume + buttons on the remote control simultaneously as instructed until the screen notifies a successful pairing to begin using it.
- On the in-vehicle cinema screen settings, select Bluetooth remote pairing. Press the Home and Volume + buttons on the remote control simultaneously as instructed until the screen notifies a successful pairing to begin using it.

CAUTION

- For optimal Bluetooth signal stability, the remote control shall be within 10 meters of the in-vehicle cinema screen and preferably connected in an open area.
- Prolonged use may drain the remote's battery. Check the indicator light regularly for a red light.
- Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider in case of failed pairing.
- If the connection fails after disconnection, try removing the remote device on the cinema screen → Settings → Link. Then, reconnect through selecting

CAUTION

Bluetooth remote pairing on the Bluetooth setting screen.

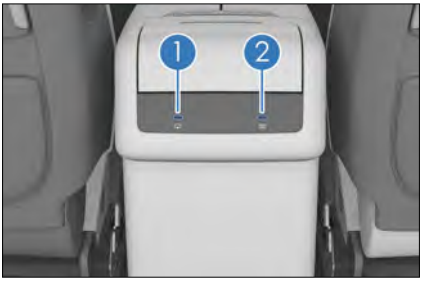
Wired Projection*

- Connect input devices, such as smartphones, tablets, or computers, via the USB input port to display content on the in-vehicle cinema screen. Connect output devices, such as AR devices, via the USB output port to project content to external devices, enabling seamless screen sharing between the vehicle and connected devices.

USE projection illustration:

① USB input port

② USB output port



CAUTION

- When projecting video, the transmitting and receiving devices, as well as the connecting cables, shall all support the DP protocol.
- The cable shall be dual Type-C type or HDMI-to-Type-C type. Some projecting devices needed to be connected to the vehicle's 220V power outlet*.

CAUTION

- Some applications may not support screen projection due to scompatibility issues.
- Some video sources cannot be projected due to copyright restrictions.
- To projecting screen, turn on and unlock the external devices (e.g., gaming console, smartphone, etc.).
- When the vehicle is in Drive, screen sharing to the central infotainment touchscreen is not supported.
- If the AR glasses are connected, wear them to display the projected content. During the projection, avoid pulling or tugging the cable to prevent connection loosening.

Rear Screen Center*

Control in-vehicle cinema by opening the rear screen center on the infotainment touchscreen → **Application center**

- Enable the screen: Tap to power on/off the in-vehicle cinema screen.
- Using duration: Tap to set using duration for the in-vehicle cinema screen.

A/C System

A/C Panel

Front A/C Panel

Front windshield defroster



Climate Controls

Front A/C Operation Interface



1	Front A/C controls	11	A/C auto mode
2	Rear A/C controls*	12	A/C ON/OFF
3	A/C settings	13	Front passenger's temperature control
4	ION*	14	Driver's temperature control
5	Max cooling	15	Front passenger's vent adjustment
6	Front windshield defroster	16	Driver's vent adjustment
7	Defroster for rear window and side mirrors*	17	Front A/C airflow mode adjustment button
8	Circulation mode	18	Front fan speed control
9	A/C button (cooling/heating)	19	Synchronization*
10	Ventilator		

Rear A/C Operation Interface*



1 Rear A/C operation interface

2 Rear A/C lock

3 Rear A/C auto mode

4 Rear A/C ON/OFF

5 Rear temperature control

6 Rear air distribution

7 Rear fan speed control

Function Definitions

Auto mode

- Tap to automatically adjust compressor state, fan speed, and air distribution mode.
- The vehicle exits auto control if fan speed or air distribution is set, and other functions remain in auto mode except for those that have been operated.

A/C ON/OFF

- Tap this button to disable the A/C if it is ON.
- Tap this button to enable the A/C if it is OFF.

Max cooling button

- Tap this button to switch the A/C to the maximum cooling control mode. The temperature is set to "Lo", the fan speed is set to the maximum, the recirculation mode is activated, and air is directed to face level.
- Tap this button again to exit.

A/C button

- Pressing this button enables the air conditioning to provide cooling mode or heat pump heating mode based on the user-selected temperature.
- Tap a second time to stop cooling or heat.

Circulation mode button

- Tap this button and then  is displayed, indicating that the circulation mode is recirculation.
- Tap this button for a second time to switch to fresh air mode. Now  is displayed.

REMINDER

- If the "auto internal circulation upon parking" feature is enabled, the recirculation mode is automatically turned on whenever the vehicle shifts into Park, to prevent the vehicle exhaust from entering the cabin, ensuring cabin air quality.

Ventilator button

- Tap this button to activate ventilation. the outlet air is natural air.
- Tap this button again to stop ventilation.

Temperature control

- Tap the upward arrow* or swipe downward to increase the temperature. Tap the sideways arrow* or swipe upward to decrease the temperature.
- When the temperature is set to the lowest, "Lo" is displayed. When it is set to the highest, "Hi" is displayed.

Windshield defroster button

- Tap this button to enter the front windshield defrost mode which distributes air to the front windshield. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel lights up.
- Tap this button again to deactivate and exit the front windshield defroster control mode. The corresponding indicator on the front A/C panel turns off.

Defroster for rear window and side mirrors*

- Tap this button to heat up and defrost the rear windshield and side mirrors.* The function is automatically deactivated after 15-minute inactivity of the associated button.
- Tap this button again to disable the function*.
- This function is not for drying raindrops or melting snow.

WARNING

- Do not touch the side mirrors or the rear windshield when the defroster is activated, because their surfaces are hot.

CAUTION

- Using this function for a long time may cause the mirror to wear out faster. Turn off the defrost button when it is not needed.

Fan speed control

- Tap the chosen position. The more bars illuminated, the faster the fan speed.

Synchronized/ Independent control *

- Switches temperature settings on the driver's side and the front passenger's side to Individual mode. The button is lit when pressed.
- Tap this button to switch from individual mode to relative mode.
  - Individual mode: The temperature of the driver's side and front passenger's side can be set separately.
  - Relative mode: use the driver's side temperature control to adjust the temperature on the driver's side and

the front passenger's side at the same time.

- When the front passenger's temperature control is operated in relative mode, the A/C system will automatically switch to individual mode.

Rear lock*

- Tap this button to lock rear A/C operation interface.
- Tap this button to switch from locked state to unlocked state.

Air distribution button

- On the infotainment touchscreen, tap to select the desired air distribution mode.
- You can turn on up to three air distribution modes at a time.
- The buttons are defined as follows:

 ——Air flows to the face level.

 ——Air flows to the foot level.

 ——Air flows to the windshield and side windows.

Usage Precautions

- To quickly cool down the interior after long exposure to sunlight, drive for a few minutes with the windows open to exhaust hot air and speed up A/C cooling.
- To speed up cooling, adjust the temperature to "Lo" and use the recirculation mode for a few minutes.
- To cool down quickly, activate the maximum cooling control mode to enable the best A/C cooling state. This makes the interior environment comfortable quickly.
- If the A/C effect does not achieve expectations, it is recommended to activate auto mode. In this mode, A/C adjusts to the appropriate ventilation temperature, mode and fan speed for comfort needs of passengers.
- Make sure that the air intake grille in front of the windshield is not blocked (for example, leaves or snow).
- Avoid blowing cool air onto the windshield in humid weather. The inner and outer temperature difference can cause glass fogging.
- Keep the space under the front seats clear to improve air circulation.
- In cold weather, run the fan at high speed for one minute to remove snow or moisture from the intake passage and reduce fogging.
- Use recirculation mode for a few minutes for quick heating in cold weather, and switch to fresh air mode to prevent fogging after cabin is heated up.
- In dusty or windy driving conditions, close all windows, switch on the recirculation mode, and turn on the A/C.
- In heating mode, press the cooling button to reduce airflow moisture and the button lights up (the compressor is on).
- In the ventilation mode, the system introduces the natural wind from outside, which is suitable for spring and autumn.

REMINDER

- A/C odor:
  - It is normal that there may be a damp and moldy smell just after the A/C is turned on. During

REMINDER

the operation of the automobile A/C, A/C condensation often remains in the evaporator, and the wet evaporator can easily absorb unfiltered body sweat, smokes, etc., inside the vehicle. Condensation not blown dry makes the dark and damp evaporator surface prone to mold, which is very likely to produce unpleasant odors by long-term fermentation.

- How to prevent A/C odors:
  - Turn off the A/C and ventilate with natural air before parking to keep the air inside the vehicle relatively dry.
  - Inspect, clean, or replace the A/C filter regularly.
  - Try to keep the cabin clean and fresh.
- If the odor does not reduce after the above operations, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- In order to reduce odours from the A/C, if the A/C is already turned on, it is normal that the A/C blower may keep running for a while after the vehicle is powered off and locked. No need to worry about it. This is to dry the condensed water on the surface of the evaporator to prevent odours caused by mold fermentation.

A/C Settings

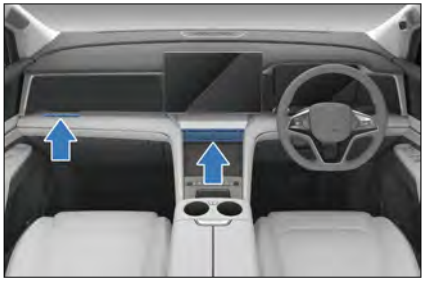
To access the A/C setting interface, go to the infotainment touchscreen→ Vehicle → A/C.

- Auto A/C mode*
  - Two options are available: Economical and Comfort.
- Remotely controlled air conditioner running time
  - Tap this button to set the time for remote A/C running.
- Automatic purification
  - Tap this button to enable auto purification function.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.
- Auto air recirculation*
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.
- Auto internal circulation in tunnel*
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.
- Fan speed reduction during calls
  - Tap this button to enable this setting.
  - Tap this button a second time to disable it.

Vents

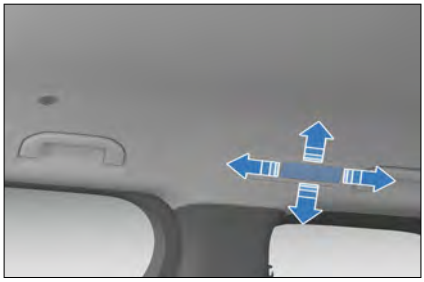
Front vents

- The front central air vent is located below the center console screen.
- Front side air vents are located on both sides of the front row.
- The user can click the infotainment touchscreen to enter the front air conditioning operation interface and adjust the airflow direction of the driver's and passenger's vents.



Roof Vents*

- Use the vent stick to adjust the outlet angle or close the vent.



BYD App*

About BYD App

- BYD app is a mobile application of Internet of Vehicle (IoV) developed by BYD independently. It allows you to control the vehicle remotely and check vehicle conditions, delivering cloud era experience of IoV.
- Search for "BYD" in Google Play or App Store to download and install BYD app.

Account Registration

Once the app is installed, follow the on-screen instructions or the steps below to sign up and log in.

1. Open the app, then tap **Sign up** to go to the registration screen.
2. Enter the email address registered with the BYD authorized dealer, tap **Send email** to receive a verification code, and then enter the code in the app.
3. Set your password in password setting screen to complete the registration, and then the homepage is displayed.

CAUTION

- Provide the email address registered at the BYD authorized dealer, or registration will fail.
- In the app, select a country or region on upper right corner of the screen. The default setting depends on your phone setting. If it is not where you make the purchase, choose the right one, otherwise your data will not be accessible.

Vehicle Condition and Control

The App homepage provides information and control items of the vehicle.

1. The homepage shows remaining driving range, SOC, vehicle error information, and status of vehicle driving, charging, A/C system, seat heater, seat ventilator, and tire pressure.
2. Tap the lock, unlock, light flashing and honking, or light flashing button to activate the corresponding function.
3. Turn on or off A/C on the app homepage, or tap the A/C card to access other settings, such as temperature regulation.
4. At the bottom of the homepage, tap the icon of seats, doors and windows,

or tires to go to the associated screen and check their status.

5. If you have multiple vehicles on an account, tap the vehicle name on the screen to switch between vehicles.

CAUTION

- The control function of the app is mainly for remote use. To use this function, ensure your phone and vehicle are connected to the Internet.

Individual Center and Vehicle Management

Tap **My Account** to go to the individual center.

- Tap the icon on the top right corner of the vehicle card to edit the vehicle name and license plate number.
- **Account and Security**: recovers or changes your password.
- **Settings**: sets message reception, automatic login, and other items.
- **About Us**: includes privacy policy and information to contact us and give feedback.

Refrigerator*

Refrigerator*

Refrigerator*

- The refrigerator is located inside the center console cubby. To use the refrigerator, open the cubby by pressing the button on it, take out the storage box, and then lift the refrigerator door.



REMINDER

- When returning the storage box, ensure the key's no-power sign faces towards the front of the vehicle.

- Users can tap the door open button either on the refrigerator control panel, or on the infotainment touchscreen → **App Center** → **Refrigerator** to unlock the drawer door, which will automatically pops out. Then pull it out to use.

Refrigerator Operation

- Users can control the refrigerator through the refrigerator control panel, infotainment touchscreen, BYD App, and voice commands.

Refrigerator control screen

① Refrigerator child protection lock

② Refrigerator ON/OFF

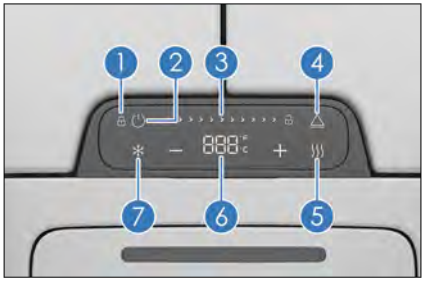
③ Swipe-unlocking button of the refrigerator screen

④ Refrigerator door open button

⑤ Heating mode

⑥ Refrigerator temperature adjusting and displaying

⑦ Cooling mode



- Swipe-unlocking function: When the refrigerator screen is locked, slide right on the ">>>>>>>>>>" are to unlock. The screen locks after about six seconds of inactivity.
- Refrigerator ON/OFF: When the refrigerator screen is unlocked, tap the button to switch between ON and OFF status.
- Refrigerator door open switch When the refrigerator screen is unlocked, tap the button to open the refrigerator.
- Adjusting temperature: When the refrigerator is enabled, press the "+" to increase the set temperature and the "-" to decrease it. The temperature unit switches between °C and °F according to the vehicle's settings.

Operation interface on the infotainment touchscreen

- The working mode and temperature can also be set on the infotainment touchscreen → **Application center** → **Refrigerator**.

① Refrigerator door open button

② Refrigerator off button

③ Cooling mode

④ Heating mode

⑤ Refrigerator temperature adjusting button

⑥ Refrigerator setting button



Setting on the infotainment touchscreen

- Tap the ⬡ on the refrigerator screen to enter the settings screen where you can set operating mode, power-off memory, child protection lock of refrigerator, and delayed power-off.

Refrigerator Functions

Working mode

- The refrigerator has three working modes: Off, Cooling, and Heating.
  - When the refrigerator is turned off, the temperature cannot be adjusted.
  - In Cooling mode, the temperature can be adjusted between -6°C and 6°C.
  - In heating mode, the temperature can be adjusted between 35°C and 50°C, and the refrigerator will maintain the temperature once the set temperature is reached.

REMINDER

- Due to vehicle configuration, the refrigerator's cooling performance may be limited when the ambient temperature drops below 0°C.

Operating mode

- The refrigerator has two operating modes: Intelligent and Economy.

- In Intelligent Mode, the refrigerator operation links with air conditioning, windows, and other vehicle systems.
- In Economy Mode, the refrigerator prioritizes energy saving during operation.

Power-off memory

- The refrigerator's power-off memory function can be enabled or disabled through the refrigerator's settings interface or voice commands.
- Press the button to enable power-off memory (button highlighted). The refrigerator retains its previous operating state after vehicle power-off and restart.
- Press the button again to disable the function (button grayed out). After power-off, the refrigerator will remain off upon vehicle restart.

Child protection lock of refrigerator

- The refrigerator's child protection lock can be enabled or disabled through the refrigerator's settings interface or front voice commands.
- Tap to light up the button, the refrigerator control panel's control functions are disable.
- Tap again to grey out the button, the refrigerator control panel's control functions are usable.

Delayed power-off

- Users can set the delayed power-off duration via the refrigerator's settings interface or voice commands, with 12 options ranging from 1 hour to 12 hours.
- The refrigerator continues running after vehicle shutdown until the set duration expires.
- The refrigerator stops automatically if battery drops below 30%.
- If the delayed power-off function is disabled, the refrigerator does not continue after vehicle shutdown.

Door not closed alert

- If the door remains open for over 1 minute while the refrigerator is active, the refrigerator interface will display that "Refrigerator door is open, please close it promptly."

Heating safety reminder

- When switching from Off or Cooling to Heating, the refrigerator interface will display: "Heating enabled. Do not place items like cola that may explode."

Voice control

- Users can use voice commands to open/close the refrigerator, adjust working modes, and set temperatures.
- Users can also use voice commands to set delayed power-off, power-off memory, and child protection lock functions.
- Only front voice command controls the refrigerator's child protection lock.

Remote control

- You can remotely control the refrigerator's working mode and temperature settings via the BYD App.

CAUTION

- Before heating, make sure that no flammable, explosive, expandable, or volatilize items, such as lighters, carbonated drinks, alcohol and wet wipes, are inside.
- Before cooling below 0°C, make sure that no cold-sensitive, expandable items like carbonated drinks are inside.

CAUTION

- Wipe off residuals like water or stains promptly to prevent bacteria and odors.
- When driving, do not place unsealed beverage containers in the refrigerator to avoid spillage.
- Do not place fragile, perishable or odorous items in the refrigerator. If placed, remove them promptly.
- Do not place overheated, corrosive, or sharp objects in the refrigerator to avoid damage to the refrigerator. Do not scratch the inner wall with sharp tools.
- With the vehicle running, make sure the refrigerator door is closed to prevent articles from flying out of the refrigerator.
- Do not leaving the refrigerator door open for extended periods to avoid items flying out during emergency braking or sudden turns.
- Do not rinse or immerse the refrigerator in water for cleaning.
- Before clean the refrigerator, switch off all power and clean it with a slightly damp cloth. Avoid using harsh detergents such as bleach or acidic cleaners, as they may cause corrosion. Do not use steel wool or metal brushes, as they may scratch the surface.

REMINDER

- To prevent foreign objects from jamming the slide rail, do not open the drawer and the flip-up lid at the same time. When the flip-up lid is open, the drawer will remain locked.

REMINDER

- When the refrigerator door pops out by pressing the control panel or the touchscreen button, mid-row passengers should exercise caution to avoid being pinched.
- The refrigerator's cooling performance is influenced by the environment. Extended door or window opening may reduce cooling efficiency. Close windows and turn on the air conditioning for optimal cooling.
- In humid weather, moisture may condense near the refrigerator after cooling is activated. Wipe it off promptly, close the windows, and turn on the air conditioning to prevent bacteria growth and unpleasant odors.
- When the refrigerator door remains open for an extended period during cooling, condensation may form inside. After placing or removing items, close the door promptly and wipe off any condensation.
- The refrigerator consumes battery power while running. It is recommended to turn off the refrigerator when it is not needed.
- When the refrigerator is in cooling mode and the delayed power-off function is enabled, the compressor and fan will continue running until the set time.
- When the refrigerator is in cooling mode with delayed power-off enabled, the air conditioning may automatically turn on after vehicle shutdown to prevent condensation near the refrigerator in high humidity.

REMINDER

- The optimal storage temperature for frozen foods such as ice cream is below -18°C. At a setting of -6°C, the refrigerator is suitable for short-term storage but cannot refreeze softened ice cream. Remove such items before leaving the vehicle.
- The refrigerator's control panel contains electronic components, and slight heating during operation is normal.

Storage

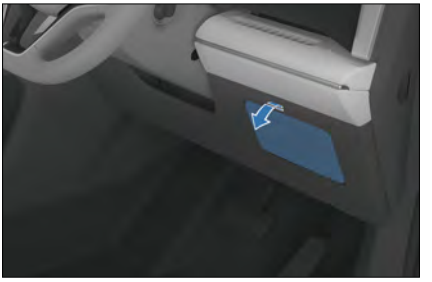
Door Bins

- There is a door bin on each front door for storage of beverage bottles or small items.



Bill Box

- Lift the bill box handle upward and outward to reach the bill box.
- Do not put large or heavy objects in the bill box to avoid closing failure.
- Keep the bill box closed while the vehicle is in motion.



Storage Cubies*

Front Cubby

- The front cubby is located on the center console and is used to store small items.



Center Console Storage Compartment

- The center console cubby can be used for storage of small items.



Rear Cubby*

- The rear cubby* is located behind the auxiliary dashboard. Pull the handle upward to unlock and pop out the rear cubby. Then slide the cubby outward to open and use it.



WARNING

- When opening the rear cubby*, rear passengers should be mindful of their foot placement to avoid injury.
- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the rear cubby* closed while driving.

Glove Box

- Press the switch to open the glove box.
- Push the lid up to close it.



Center Console Cubby

- Press the button to open the center console cubby automatically.
- To close the center console cubby, push the left and right covers inward.



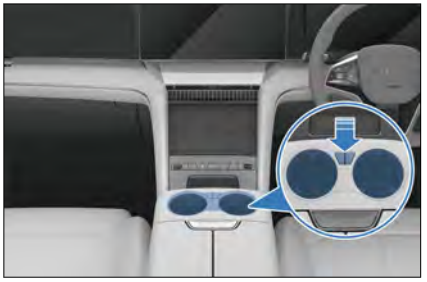
REMINDER

- To reduce risk of injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking, keep the center console cubby closed while driving.

Cup Holder

Front Seat Cup Holder

- The front seat cup holder is located in front of the center console cubby.
- Insert the cup into the cup holder. Press down gently to secure the cup in place.
- Press the cup holder unlock button, and the cup automatically rises for easy access.



CAUTION

- The cup may not fit into the cup holder due to its size or shape.
- Before driving, please remove any cups or other items from the front cup holders that may obstruct the driver's view.

REMINDER

- Please keep the inside of the cup holder clean and free of debris, such as sand, leaves, etc.

Door Side Cup Holder

- The cup holders are located on both sides of the electric sliding door panel.



CAUTION

- Before operating the sliding door, ensure that there are no objects in the cup holders on both sides

CAUTION

of the door that could impede the door's movement and potentially damage the vehicle.

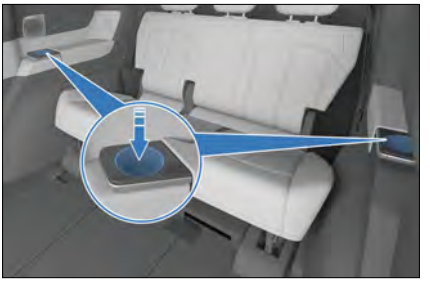
Second-Row Cup Holder

- The second-ow seat cup holder is located behind the auxiliary dashboard.
- Press the button to access the second-row cup holder.



Third Row Seat Cup Holder*

- The third-row cup holders are located on both sides of the third-row seats.



WARNING

- When placing hot drinks, be careful to avoid burns. Do not start or brake the vehicle suddenly when the cup holders are being

WARNING

used to prevent spillage or scalding.

- Do not place an open cup or loose beverage bottle in the cup holder, so as to avoid liquid spillage while you are driving, opening or closing a door.
- Do not place glass cups, ceramic cups, or other hard containers in the cup holders. In the event of an accident or emergency braking, such items may be thrown out, causing injury to occupants.
- To ensure safe driving, the driver is strictly prohibited from taking the cup out or placing it in the cup holder while driving.

Seatback Pockets

There are seatback pockets at the back of the front and second-row seats for storing magazines, newspapers, or similar objects. (The seatback pockets on your actual vehicle may differ.)



Phone Holder*

- The third-row seats are equipped with phone holders* on both sides, designed to hold phones or small items.

Configuration 1:



Configuration 2:



CAUTION

- Only palce appropriately sized phones or items in the phone holders.
- When putting a phone into the phone holder, avoid placing it upside down to prevent jamming, thus causes damage to the phone or vehicle.

Other Devices

Sun Visor

① Sun visor

- To block sunlight from the front, pull the sun visor down.

- To block sunlight from a side, remove the swivel sleeve from the fixed support and turn the visor towards the side window.



② Vanity mirror

- Flip down the sun visor and slide the mirror cover for use.

REMINDER

- Correct use of the sun visor improves driving safety and comfort.

Grab Handles

- Pull the grab handle down for use. The handle returns to its original position when released.

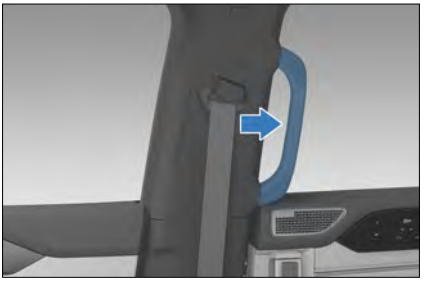


CAUTION

- Do not hang any heavy objects from the grab handles.

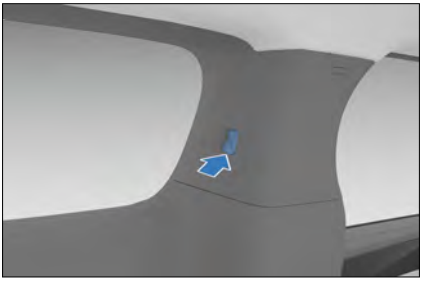
Auxiliary Handles

- Auxiliary handles on the pillars can help passengers get on or off the vehicle.



Clothes Hooks

- The clothes hooks are located on both sides of the third-row seats.



WARNING

- Do not hang any heavy objects on the hook to avoid damage to the hook and occupants.
- Please hang clothes directly on the hook. Do not hang other items on the hook (like hangers or sharp objects). These items may injure the occupants when the side curtain airbags deploy, or may prevent such airbags from fully deploying.

On-board Power Supply

- It is used for accessories with 12V DC working voltage and no more than 10A working current.
- The 12V auxiliary power is available only when the ignition has been switched on. Lift the cover to use it.



CAUTION

- To prevent fuses from blowing, the power consumption must not exceed 12V/120W of total vehicle load.
- To prevent draining the low-voltage battery, do not use the 12V auxiliary power supply for extended periods while the vehicle is not started.
- When the 12V auxiliary power is not in use, close its cover. Do not insert any object other than a suitable plug into the 12V auxiliary power socket or let any liquid ingress the socket, as electrical failure may result.

USB Ports

Front-row USB ports

- They are located at the hollowed-out part below the center console.

① Type-C charge port

② Type-A data transmission port



CAUTION

- It is recommended to use a USB storage device with a capacity of 8 to 128GB, formatted in FAT32, ExFAT and NTFS.
- Do not use USB storage devices of special categories to prevent damage to the infotainment system or data in the USB device.

Second-row USB ports

- The second-row USB ports are located behind the center console cubby, and can be opened by pressing the protective cover.
  - The right side of the left seat in the second row is equipped with a Type-A charging port.
  - The left side of the right seat in the second row is equipped with a Type-C fast-charging port.



REMINDER

- The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.

Third-row USB ports

- The Third-row USB ports are located on both sides of the third-row seats.
  - The left side is equipped with a Type-A charge port.
  - The right side is equipped with a Type-C fast-charge port.



REMINDER

- The power outlet can be used only when the ignition is on.

SD Card Slot

- An SD card slot is located at the hollowed-out part below the center console.
- The infotainment system supports TF card (also called Micro-SD card) ranging from 64 to 128GB with a Class 10 speed rating or higher and FAT32 format.



CAUTION

- Insert the card horizontally.
- Incompatible cards may not be read by the infotainment system.
- It is recommended to use a USB storage device with a partition format of FAT32 and a memory of 32G.
- TF cards with non-FAT32 partition format need to be converted into FAT32 format before first use, otherwise the system may fail to recognize them.
- Before removing the TF card, shut down the infotainment system, or video files may be damaged.

Wireless Phone Charger*

- The wireless phone charging area is located at the front of the center console cubby. After starting the vehicle, put the phone at the wireless charger area with the phone screen facing up. The phone automatically begins wireless charging, and a charging icon is displayed on the infotainment screen.
- To select or unselect the DOOR option, slide down from the top of the infotainment touchscreen to access the shortcut screen.



- The wireless phone charging function only works with Qi-certified phones.
- The charger uses a coil to transmit electrical energy to the phone battery through electromagnetic wave induction so that the phone can be charged without a cable connection.

CAUTION

- Ensure your smart key is more than 25 cm away from the wireless charger area when the wireless charger system is working.
- To avoid wireless charger dysfunction or even accidents, do not place coins, metal keys, metal rings, or other articles containing metal in the wireless charger area together with the phone.
- To avoid damage to the charger area, do not place heavy objects on it.
- If the phone wireless charger system is faulty and does not work properly, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- BYD will not assume any responsibility for any problems caused by improper use. If the product is disassembled or modified, the free warranty will be terminated.

CAUTION

- For safety reasons, do not leave an unattended phone being charged in the vehicle.
- For safety reasons, refrain from checking phone charging status for a long time while driving.
- If a metal item is found between the device and the charger during charging, do not remove the metal item with bare hands to prevent burning.
- For better charging, the center of the phone coil must be aligned with the center of wireless charger (indicated with text in the charging area).
- Prevent any fluid from coming into contact with the charger area, or the wireless charger will malfunction.
- Charging may stop at high temperatures, and will resume once the temperature drops.
- The wireless phone charger system can charge Qi-certified phones, and non-Qi-certified phones are not guaranteed for normal charging.
- BYD makes no commitments for problems caused by external wireless charging coils. Please use with caution.
- To avoid burning cards with chips, such as bank cards and NFC key card*, do not place them between the phone case and the phone during charging.

REMINDER

- Only one phone can be charged at a time.
- A phone case that is too thick may prevent charging.
- You can enable or disable wireless charging on the infotainment touchscreen.
- On bumpy roads, the wireless phone charger may intermittently stop and then resume.
- Try to ensure that the surface on which a mobile phone is placed is parallel to the charging module. If the phone moves from the wireless charger area and stops charging, move it back.
- If the phone is not charging properly, ensure that the phone is within the charging area and that there are no foreign objects in the charging area. Wait for the wireless charging area to cool down and try again. If it is still impossible to charge the phone, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- After power-off, if the phone is still charging and the driver's door is opened, the instrument cluster sounds an alarm and a warning text "Please take your cell phone with you" is displayed for five seconds.
- For the purpose of compatibility, the in-vehicle wireless fast charging module may be slower than the original charger provided by your phone’ s manufacturer.
- The wireless fast charging* power of your phone depends on that supported by the phone, while the in-vehicle fast charging* only supports up to 50W.

REMINDER

- Some phones may carry outdated charging programs that are not capable of fast charging*.

Tray Table*

The tray table is folded at the back of the front seats.

Unfold the tray table:

1. Press the unlock button.
2. Hold the edge of the tray table, lift it up to the limit position, and unfold it.



Fold the tray table:

1. Hold the edge of the tray table, lift it up slightly to the limit position.
2. Push it forward to the locking position.



WARNING

- When using the table, make sure to observe the following precautions to prevent injury or even death in the event of an accident or emergency braking.
  - During operation, put your hands away from the folding area and the rotating mechanism to prevent pinching.
  - Do not use the tray table when the vehicle is running.
  - Do not lean or place items over 10 kg on the tray table.
  - Fold the table when it is not in use.

CAUTION

- Do not press the table to prevent damage.

06 MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Precautions..... 224
Regular Maintenance.....229
Self-Maintenance.....236

Maintenance Precautions

Maintenance Cycle and Items

Maintenance Plan

- The maintenance plan is designed to reduce failures, ensuring stable driving and safe, economical driving.
- The maintenance schedule lists maintenance items that are necessary to keep the vehicle in optimum condition at all times and are to be performed according to the specified time interval.
- In particular, any degraded or damaged hoses are to be replaced immediately. Rubber hoses (for systems such as cooling, heating, and braking systems) must be checked by professional technicians according to the maintenance schedule.

Maintenance Plan Requirement

The vehicle must be maintained according to the regular maintenance schedule.

If the vehicle is operated primarily under one or more of the following special conditions, certain maintenance items may need to be performed more frequently.

- Road conditions
  - Muddy, sandy, or snowy roads.
  - Dusty roads.
- Driving conditions
  - Use of towed trailer, camping trailer, or roof rack
  - Repeated short distances are driven within 8 km, and the outside temperature is below zero.
  - Long idling and/or long distance driving at low speed, for example, using the vehicle as a police car, taxis or using it for transporting goods.

Maintenance Schedule

First maintenance:

The vehicle must be maintained at 6 months or 5,000 km (HEV mileage)for the first time, whichever comes first.

First maintenance items include vehicle basic maintenance, replacement of engine oil and oil filter, and check of engine idle speed and crankcase ventilation system.

Routine maintenance:

Routine maintenance include vehicle basic maintenance, maintenance of other items, and engine maintenance.

Vehicle basic maintenance: After the first maintenance, carry out the basic maintenance according to the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Cooling pipe damage and connecting part tightness	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake friction block and brake discs	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Brake pedal and EPB switch*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance
Brake piping and hoses	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Steering wheel and tie rod	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Drive shaft boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Ball pin and dust boot	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Front and rear suspensions	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Tire wear (such as tread depth and wear patterns)	Check during maintenance. In severe driving conditions, check more frequently and rotate tires or perform wheel alignment when necessary.
Wheel bearing clearance	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Foreign materials on or ablation of the EPS GND point	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
EPS connector looseness and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
EPS ECU corrosion	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Foreign materials or corrosion on connections between the EPS ECU and motor*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Check the door brakes. Remove the dust from the lever with a damp soft cloth, and apply 0.3–0.8 g of grease to the lever, riveting joint, and rotating shaft	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Hood lock and fasteners	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Coolant level in expansion tank	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Brake fluid	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Vehicle module DTCs (to be cleared after recording)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
High-voltage battery tray, crash bar, shield, crash valve, thermal insulation cotton, and mounting torque	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Powertrain leaks or bumps	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Fasteners such as high-voltage distribution box and DC charging distribution box	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Loose high-voltage wiring harnesses or connectors and connector pin ablation	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Deformation of or oil/fluid stains on the high-voltage module	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Foreign materials on or ablation of charging connector interface	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Wading marks on high-voltage parts	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Vehicle module software update (update if any)	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Lamp and LED lighting	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Headlight dimming	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Initial down tilt of low beam	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
HEPA filter	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance; in case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, check in a timely manner and replace the A/C filter when necessary
PM2.5 quick tester filter*	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance; in case of harsh environment or reduced air outlet, check in a timely manner and replace the A/C filter when necessary

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Transmission filter cover	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Lock nut torque of wiper arm	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Vehicle glass glue attachment	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Check sliding door guide for wear	Check every 12 months or 20,000 km after the first maintenance.
Check and clean the sliding door guide rail and pulley. Apply lubricating grease to the sliding surface.	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance.
Air leakage of exhaust pipe joint	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Bumps on the appearance of the three-way catalytic converter	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, and connections	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance
Charcoal canister	Check every 24 months or 40,000 km after the first maintenance

Maintenance of other items: Comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (total mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
High-voltage battery pack sealing	Test every two years or 40,000 km, whichever comes first. If the breather valve is found to be damaged or cannot be tightened to the specified torque during maintenance, please replace it.
Engine coolant and drive motor coolant (turbocharged engine)	Replace the long-acting organic acid coolant every 4 years or 100,000 km
Brake fluid	Check during maintenance and replace every two years or 40,000 km
EHS special gear oil	Check the amount of EHS gear oil during maintenance; replace the oil and the filter element assembly every four years or 60,000 km

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Capacity test and correction	Test and calibrate capacity every 6 months or 72,000 km.

Engine maintenance: Engine maintenance should comply with the following maintenance interval and mileage (HEV mileage), whichever comes first.

Item	Time/Mileage Interval
Engine oil and oil filter (turbocharged engine)	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance.
Crankcase ventilation system (PCV valve and ventilation hose)	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance.
Engine idle speed	Check every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance.
Gasoline detergent (turbocharged engine)	Refill every 12 months or 10,000 km after the first maintenance.
Spark plug	Replace at 42 months or 35,000 km for the first time, and every 48 months or 40,000 km afterwards.
Fuel filter (non-integrated)	Check and replace at 18 months or 15,000 km for the first time, and replace every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards
Air filter element	Replace at 18 months or 15,000 km for the first time, and every 24 months or 20,000 km afterwards; Check under severe conditions of use and replace in advance if necessary
Dust filter of charcoal canister (when DMTL is equipped)	Replace every two years or 30,000 km, or upon frequent fuel gun auto shut-off during refueling

REMINDER

- A bottle (180 mL/bottle) of gasoline detergent should be added for the turbocharged engine each time after the first maintenance.
- Add gasoline detergent first and then fill up the fuel tank. Do not refuel or add gasoline detergent before the refueling prompt displays on the instrument cluster or the fuel indicator turns yellow.
- To keep the high-voltage battery in optimal condition, please fully charge and discharge the vehicle

REMINDER

regularly (at least every six months or 72,000 km, whichever comes first) for battery self-calibration. You can also contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for capacity testing and calibration.

- In following severe working conditions, it is recommended to shorten the routine mileage interval based on the actual situations to protect the vehicle. The vehicle travels at low temperatures (ambient temperature <5°C) with short continuous driving time (less than 15 minutes) in HEV mode or often creeps (vehicle speed <10 km/h) for a long time.

Comment

- The maintenance intervals in the table are calculated starting from the purchase date.
- To keep the vehicle in the optimum state, follow the instructions below to operate the vehicle correctly.
  - Before the first maintenance, break in the vehicle in ECO mode with the use ratio of HEV mode not less than 50%.
  - After the first maintenance, the use ratio of HEV mode should not be less than 10%.
- The replacement time interval of the oil filter can be shortened according to the degree of fouling of the gasoline engine.
- In cold conditions, reduce service interval to 5,000 km (HEV-specific) or 6 months with service limited to oil and oil filter replacement only.
- Severe driving conditions refer to:
  - Frequent driving in dusty areas or frequent exposure to salt-laden air
  - Frequent driving on bumpy, puddled, or mountain roads.
  - Driving in cold weather.
  - Frequent and sudden braking.
  - Frequent use of a towed trailer.
  - Used as a taxi.
  - Driving in congested urban areas at temperatures above 32°C for more than 50% of total travel time
  - Driving at speeds over 120 km/h at temperatures above 30°C for more than 50% of total travel time
  - Frequent overloading.
- After service replacement of a new engine, the first service must be performed at 5,000 km (HEV-specific) or 6 months, whichever comes first, with oil and oil filter replacement only.

Regular Maintenance

Regular Maintenance

- Be sure to maintain the vehicle as per the maintenance schedule to allow it serve in the best working efficiency and reduce fault occurrence.
- Drivers can refer to the maintenance plan for scheduled maintenance intervals, depending on the odometer reading or time interval, whichever comes first.
- For overdue maintenance items, the same time interval should be used for maintenance.

- It is recommended that the maintenance be performed in accordance with the standards and specifications of BYD Auto Industry Co., Ltd., and by a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The maintenance schedule lists the maintenance items and travel time or distance based on the assumption that the vehicle is used as a normal means of transportation to carry passengers and goods that do not exceed the vehicle load limit.

CAUTION

- Please maintain the vehicle regularly according to the requirements in the Warranty and Maintenance Service Manual of BYD.

Vehicle Servicing

- Pay attention to vehicle performance, sound changes, and visual evidence that indicates service is required. Under any of the following circumstances, it is recommended to send the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection or repair as soon as possible:
  - Motor start produces unusual noises.
  - Coolant remains overheated, is stagnated or leaks.
  - Motor jams and produces unexpected noise.
  - The motor runs with excessive vibration.
  - The motor fails to get started.
  - Electric assembly leaks oil.
  - Electric assembly emits odors.
  - Power declines significantly.
  - Water leaks from under the vehicle (A/C condensate is normal).
  - Tire deflates; tires make excessive noises at turns; tire wear is uneven.
  - Vehicle leads to one side when driving straight on a flat surface.
  - Suspension unit movement leads to unusual noises.
  - Loss of braking effect; sponge feeling on the brake pedal or clutch pedal; pedal almost contacts the floor; vehicle leads to one side when braking.
  - Motor coolant temperature remains high.
  - Battery capacity decreases significantly.
  - High battery temperature or overheat protection persists, or there is no power output.
  - "Please check the engine system" is displayed on the instrument cluster.
  - There is obvious abnormal vibration or noise in the engine compartment.
  - The engine leaks oil or water.
  - The vehicle exhausts blue smoke or thick black smoke.
  - A/C system fails to blow cold or hot air during refrigeration or heating.

WARNING

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Vehicle Corrosion Prevention

The most common causes of vehicle corrosion are:

- The underbody of the vehicle is covered in salt, dust or moisture.
- The vehicle or some of its parts are exposed to high humidity and high temperature for a long time.
- The paint layer or underlayer is scratched by minor collision or by stones and gravel.

The following rules should be observed to prevent vehicle corrosion:

- Wash the vehicle frequently.
  - If driving on saline roads in winter or living in coastal areas, wash the landing area of the vehicle at least once a month, and clean the chassis and hubcap with a high-pressure water jet or steam to reduce corrosion. Wash the chassis thoroughly after winter.
- Check body paint and trims.
  - Any chip or crack found on the paint must be repaired immediately to prevent corrosion. If fragments or cracks peel off from the metal surface, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for repair.
- Check cabin interior.
  - Moisture and dust buildup under the carpet can cause corrosion. Check the undersides of carpets frequently to make sure these areas are dry.
  - Special care should be taken when transporting chemicals, detergents, fertilizers, salt, and other substances, and such substances should be kept in appropriate containers for transportation. If spillage or leakage is found, clean immediately and keep dry.
- Use fenders.
  - Fenders can protect vehicles in saline areas or on gravel roads. The bigger and closer to the ground the fender, the better.
- Park in a well-ventilated and dry area.

Paint Maintenance Tips

- Clean the vehicle in time.
- Do not perform secondary painting if there is no obvious scratches on the finish, so as to prevent mismatch or color incompatibility.
- When the vehicle is not used for a long period, it should be parked in a garage or a well-ventilated place, and special body cover should be used in winter. Choose a shady place for parking temporarily.
- Prevent strong impacts, knocks, or scratches on the paint. If the paint is scratched, dented or if it peels, it should be repaired in time, preferably by professional auto beauty provider.
- Do not touch the paint with a greasy hand or cloth. Do not place greasy tools or rub with organic solvents on the vehicle body so as to avoid chemical reactions.
- The vehicle must be waxed once a month or whenever water resistance performance of the vehicle degrades and be taken to an auto beauty provider for maintenance once every three months.
- High quality polish and wax must be used. If body finish is severely weathered, use a car cleaning polish in addition to the wax. Carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions and

precautions. Chrome finish should be polished and waxed as well as painted finish.

CAUTION

- When the vehicle is repainted and placed in a high-temperature paint waxing workshop, the vehicle's plastic bumper must be removed to avoid damage caused by high temperatures.

Exterior Cleaning

- The vehicle must be cleaned in time under the following circumstances, which can cause peeling of paint layer or corrosion of the vehicle body and parts:
  - Driving along the coast.
  - Driving on a road with anti-freeze.
  - Driving on roads covered with coal tar.
  - Resin, bird droppings, or insect carcasses are stuck on the vehicle.
  - Driving in areas with a large amount of smoke, soot, dust, iron filings, or chemicals.
  - The vehicle is visibly soiled by dust or mud.
  - After raining.

CAUTION

- Before washing the vehicle, enable the washing mode* and ensure all doors, hood, trunk, sunroof*, and access panels are closed.
- Do not open the access panels to clean the interior.

CAUTION

- Do not wash the vehicle in hot and direct sunlight conditions.

Manual Vehicle Washing

Ensure the water temperature does not exceed 60°C before washing the vehicle.

- Hose off loose dirt, including all mud or road salts at the bottom of the vehicle and on wheel pits.
- Clean the vehicle with automotive-specific pH-neutral car shampoo, and use it according to the product instructions. Avoid using strongly alkaline/acidic cleaners or organic substances (such as gasoline, kerosene, naphtha, or strong solvents) for cleaning. Soak a soft cloth with cleaning solution and gently wipe it down along the direction of the water flow. Do not wipe in a circular motion or horizontally.
- Rinse well—Dried washing agent forms markings. After washing the vehicle in hot weather, rinse all parts properly.
- Dry the vehicle with a clean soft towel to prevent stay water marks. In order to prevent scratching, do not rub or apply excessive force on the paint.

Washing with high-pressure washer

- When using high-pressure washer to wash the vehicle, follow the instructions:
  - The distance between the high-pressure water jet nozzle and the vehicle surface being cleaned should be greater than 50 cm.
  - The recommended pressure for the high-pressure water jet is less than 60 bar, and the maximum pressure is up to 100 bar.

- Use a fan-shaped or mist spray pattern (do not use a direct high-pressure jet spray).
- Keep the nozzle in constant motion during rinsing. Avoid staying stationary in one spot.
- Do not use a high-pressure water jet to clean the vehicle underbody.
- Do not clean the engine compartment directly with a high-pressure water jet. Instead, use low-pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Avoid prolonged rinsing of the lower area of the front windshield, as water entering the air conditioning intake can easily damage the system.
- Do not use a high-pressure water jet to directly rinse the seal strips, as this may lead to water ingress into the vehicle.
- Do not use a high-pressure water jet to directly rinse external surfaces of sensors such as lidar, camera lenses, etc., to avoid damage.

CAUTION

- Do not use any alkaline washing powder, soapy water, detergents, de-waxing detergents or volatile substance (gasoline, kerosene, or solvent).
- When cleaning the lights, avoid using alcohol-based products (like alcohol and windshield washer fluid), ketones (such as lacquer thinner and insect remover), or other chemical solvents (including gasoline, thinner, and carbon tetrachloride), as these can cause the light casings to crack.
- It is recommended that vehicles traveling in coastal or heavily polluted areas be washed once a day.

CAUTION

- Do not use blades or gasoline to remove hard dirt from the vehicle body. The plastic wheel trim is easily damaged by organic matter. If any organic matter splashes on the vehicle trim, remove it with water and check whether the trim is damaged. Replace any seriously damaged plastic wheel trim in a timely manner. Otherwise, the trim may fall from the wheel during vehicle movement and cause an accident.
- Do not use abrasive cleaning agents to scrub the bumper.
- Clean polished metal parts with carbon cleaner and wax them regularly for protection.
- Be careful when cleaning the chassis to avoid cutting hands.

Automatic Vehicle Washing

When choosing an automated car wash service, be aware of certain types of brushes, unfiltered rinsing water, or machine-specific rinsing procedures that may scratch the paint and affect its gloss and durability, especially darker colors. Before washing the vehicle, it is best to consult the service provider or check equipment instructions to understand which washing procedures are the safest for the paint finish.

CAUTION

- Disabling AVH function before washing the vehicle by using the automated wash equipment.
- Folding side mirrors before washing the vehicle. Unfolding side mirrors before driving.

Interior Cleaning

REMINDER

- Prevent direct water splash onto the dashboard or floor when washing the vehicle, as these may cause electrical faults.
- Do not wash the vehicle's floor to prevent corrosion.

Carpet

- Clean carpets with a good foam detergent.
- Use a vacuum cleaner to remove as much dust as possible. Several types of foam detergents can be used. Some are in spray cans, and the others are powders or liquids, which produce foam when mixed with water. Clean the carpets with foam soaked sponge or a brush, scrubbing in a circular motion.
- Do not use plain water, and keep the carpets as dry as possible.

Seat Belt Maintenance

- The seat belts can be cleaned with neutral soapy water or lukewarm water.
- Scrub the seat belts with a sponge or soft cloth. Check the seat belts for excessive wear, tear, or cut marks.

WARNING

- Do not clean the seat belt with colorant or bleach. These substances may decrease the seat belt's strength.
- Do not use any seat belt that is not dry.

Doors and Windows

- Doors and windows can be cleaned with any ordinary detergent.
- Check the door checks regularly. If the check lever is found with visible dust accumulation, wipe it with a wet soft cloth. Then apply 0.3 - 0.8 g of lubricant between the bracket and the pull rod riveting shaft, and between the pull rod and the sliding block.

CAUTION

- When cleaning the inside of the rear windows, take care not to scratch or damage electric heating wires or junctions.

A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches

- Clean the A/C control panel, vehicle speakers, dashboard, control panel and switches with a wet soft cloth.
- Wipe dust off gently with a clean soft cloth soaked in lukewarm water.

CAUTION

- Do not use any organic matter (such as solvents, kerosene, alcohol, gasoline) or acid-base solutions. These chemicals can cause discoloration, staining, or flaking.
- Please confirm that the detergent or polishing agent to be used does not contain the above substances.
- If a new liquid washing agent is used, do not splash it onto the interior surface of the vehicle, because it may contain the above substances. Clear any splashed liquid quickly.

Leather

- Leather trimmings can be cleaned with a neutral detergent for woolen.
- Use a soft cloth with a neutral detergent solution to wipe off the dust, and then use a clean, wet cloth to wipe the remaining detergent thoroughly.
- If leather gets wet, wipe it with a clean soft cloth. Dry the leather in a well-ventilated, cool place.
- For any questions about vehicle cleaning, please consult a local BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If dirt cannot be cleaned off using a neutral detergent, clean it with a detergent that does not contain organic solvents.
- Do not clean leather with any organic material such as volatile oil, alcohol, gasoline, or acid-base solution, as these will cause discoloration.
- Do not clean leather with a nylon brush or synthetic fiber cloth, as these may scratch the fine patterns on the leather surface.
- Mold may grow on dirty leather trimmings. Special care must be taken to avoid oil stains, and trimmings must always be kept clean.
- Prolonged exposure to sunlight will cause leather to harden or shrink, so the vehicle should be parked in a shady and cool place, especially in the summer.
- In hot weather, avoid placing vinyl or waxy items on the trimmings, as these may stick to leather in high temperatures.

CAUTION

- Improper cleaning of leather trimmings may cause discoloration or spots.
- Do not use liquid cleaning agents on genuine leather seats, as moisture may penetrate the inner layer, causing blisters or difficult-to-remove marks.
- If seats become wet, promptly dry with a soft cloth or tissue paper, do not use the hairdryer immediately.

Power Sliding Door Maintenance

Maintenance of guide rail, pulley and middle guide rail wear plate

- Regularly check whether there is dust, deformation, depression or embedded foreign matter on the surface of the upper, middle and lower pulleys, guide rails and wear-resistant plates of the sliding door.
- If any of the above abnormalities are detected, use an air gun to clean inner wall of the guide rail and the pulley surface, or use a damp cloth to clean wear plate surface of the center guide rail.

CAUTION

- Before the maintenance of guide rail, pulley and wear plate, please turn off the power sliding door function on the infotainment touchscreen→Locks→Doors.
- After cleaning, please open and close the door for three times, if there is obvious abnormal sound

CAUTION

in the pulley, guide rail and wear-resistant plate, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Tracking mechanism maintenance

- The buffer pad of the movable assembly of the guiding mechanism is made of synthetic rubber, which is a wearing part. The wear of the guiding mechanism buffer pad varies with different use conditions and frequency. Please pay attention to the following matters in order to prevent the power sliding door from producing shaking noise during driving:
  - Regularly check the surface of the rubber pad of the tracking mechanism movable component, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance if there is a noticeable wear.
  - If there is obvious abnormal noises in the guiding mechanism during driving, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance by professionals.

Maintenance of the Full-Open Limit Lock Ring

- Regularly check the rubber buffer block on the full-open limit lock ring assembly. If looseness, surface damage, or complete detachment is detected, it is recommended to go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection and repair by professionals.

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance

Self-Maintenance Precautions

- If maintenance is to be carried out by the owner, be sure to follow the correct steps specified in this section.
- Note that improper and incomplete maintenance will affect the good use of the vehicle.
- This section only lists instructions on simple maintenance items that can be done by the owner. However, there are many items that must be done by qualified technicians with special tools.
- Special care must be taken in maintaining vehicles to prevent accidental injuries. Make sure to obey the followings:

CAUTION

- Beware of short circuits, as some circuits and vehicle components carry high current or voltage.
- If coolant overflows, wipe it with a dry cloth or tissue to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint and add coolant in time.
- Only specified spark plug can be used. The use of other spark plug may result in engine performance loss or damage, or radio interference to other electric products.
- Do not reuse the spark plug by cleaning it or adjusting the spark plug gap.

CAUTION

- If brake fluid overflows, rinse it with water to prevent damage to components or vehicle paint.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, the engine will be excessively worn.
- When replacing wiper blades, do not allow the wipers to scratch the glass surface.
- Before closing the engine cover, check whether any tool or wipe cloth is left in the engine compartment.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothes and tools at a certain distance from the rotating fan. It is recommended to take off the watch, ring, or tie.
- The engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and spark plug cover are hot after driving. Do not touch them and be careful to operate. The engine oil and other fluid may be hot too.
- To prevent burns, do not remove or loosen the expansion tank cap or remove the water pump, if the engine is very hot.
- Do not smoke in or near the vehicle to avoid sparks or open flames that may cause fire.
- Ensure the vehicle is turned off when working around the electric fan or radiator grill. If the engine coolant is hot or the A/C System is on with the vehicle powered on, the electric fan may automatically start.
- When working inside or under the vehicle, always wear goggles to protect your eyes against flying or falling objects or splashing liquid.

CAUTION

- As brake fluid may damage the skin or eyes, be careful when filling it. If your skin or eyes are exposed to brake fluid, immediately flush with clean water. Seek medical attention immediately if discomfort persists.

Self-check

The following items should be checked according to usage or specified mileage:

- Coolant level: The radiator expansion tank should be checked monthly.
- Windshield washer fluid: The residual amount of washer liquid in the tank should be checked monthly. When washer liquid is frequently used, the residual amount of liquid should be checked more often.
- Windshield wiper: Check the wiper condition monthly. If the wiper does not work, check it for wear, cracking, or other damage.
- Brake fluid level: Check the level monthly.
- Brake pedal: Check whether the brake pedal can be operated freely and whether the brake light switch limiting pad is aged or damaged.
- Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) — Check if the electronic parking function is working properly.
- Low-voltage battery - Check battery conditions and check for terminal corrosion monthly.
- A/C system - Check the operation of A/C units weekly.
- Tires - Check tire pressure monthly. Check tread wear and whether there are foreign bodies embedded.

- Windshield defrosters - Check the defroster vent monthly.
- Lights - Check the condition of headlights, position lights, tail lights, high mount brake light, turn signals, rear fog lights, brake lights and license plate light monthly.
- Doors: Check whether the trunk lid and all other doors (including rear doors) can be opened freely and locked securely.
- Horn - Check whether the horn is functioning properly.

WARNING

- Do not continue driving a vehicle that has not been inspected, as this may result in serious vehicle damage and personal injury.

Lights

Headlight adjustment

- Headlights are aligned before vehicle delivery. If the vehicle carries heavy load frequently, headlights may need to be realigned. It is recommended to have the headlights aligned by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Fogging of lights

- Combination lights, tail lights, and turn signals on the side mirrors may become foggy after heavy rain or cleaning. This is similar to condensation on the side window during rain. It does not mean any problem with your vehicle.
- The lights are in a relatively enclosed and narrow space. The temperature is very high when they light up (the mask and reflector could be burned and deformed easily), so they need heat dissipation. There are heat dissipation holes on the lamp housing for convection. The greater the temperature difference is, the more active the convection is. During the convection, the moisture in the air inevitably enters a lamp. Factors such as exposure to sunlight, convection, and bulb heating can cause the moisture in the air to condense into fog or water beads easily on the lamp surface at low temperatures. This is called fogging of lights.

WARNING

- The headlight bulb becomes very hot when illuminated. Grease, sweat, or scratches on the surface of the bulb glass cause the bulb to overheat and break.

REMINDER

- If fog presents inside the headlight and inside the turn signals on side mirrors, it may be due to high air humidity or significant temperature difference between the vehicle and its surroundings. In that case, turn on the headlight or turn signal while driving. The fog will evaporate after a short period of driving.
- If there is a noticeable amount of water inside the lights, it is recommended to drive the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

Sunroof Maintenance

Ordinary Sunroof Maintenance*

- Wipe off dust or sand on the sealing strips of the sunroof with a wet cloth to avoid scratching them, which may affect their sealing performance.

- Wipe off dust or sand around the roof metal sheet with a wet cloth to prevent abrasion of sealing strips when the sunroof is closed, which may affect the sunroof sealing performance.
- Frequently clean the rails, front sash and other parts to avoid the accumulation of dust, sand, and leaves, and prevent the drainage holes from being blocked by such debris, resulting in water leakage into the vehicle.
- When washing the vehicle, do not aim high-pressure water jets directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.
- The sunroof freezes easily in winter. Forcibly opening the frozen sunroof will damage sealing strips or other parts. Instead, warm up the vehicle and turn on the A/C system to accelerate the melting of snow and ice on the sunroof. Try to open the sunroof after the temperature inside reaches a certain level. Dry the residual moisture on the sunroof to prevent it from freezing.
- Do not open the sunroof fully on extremely bumpy roads. Vibration between the sunroof and the rail may deform related parts and even damage the motor. In addition, do not open the sunroof when it rains or the vehicle is being washed.

Panoramic Canopy Maintenance*

- Wipe off dust or sand on the outer sealing strips of the sunroof with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Wipe off dust or sand on the molding edges of the front glass with a damp cloth to avoid scratches, which may reduce sunroof sealing performance.
- Clean the rails on both sides and the front channels frequently to avoid the accumulation of foreign materials like dust, sand, and leaves, and prevent such debris from blocking drainage holes, which could result in poor drainage of the sunroof.
- When washing the vehicle, make sure that the high-pressure water jets are at a sufficient distance from the vehicle, do not aim them directly at the sealing strips, to prevent high pressure from distorting even damaging the strips and water from leaking into the vehicle.

Vehicle Storage

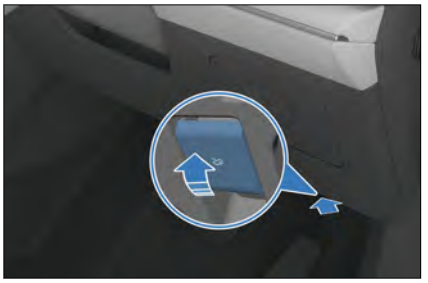
- If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time (more than a month), the following preparations should be made. Proper preparation helps prevent degradation and ensure easy use of the vehicle. If possible, park the vehicle indoors.
- Thoroughly clean and dry the body surface.
- Clean the interior of the vehicle to ensure that carpets and mats are completely dry.
- Set the gearshift lever in parking gear.
- If the vehicle needs to be stored for a long time, jack up the vehicle body to keep the tires off the ground.
- When in normal state, the vehicle can be left in storage for a long of time with the low-voltage battery remain connected, as long as it has been fully charged before. In addition, avoid waking up the vehicle frequently, or the battery SOC may deviate too much to start the vehicle.

- Pad the front wiper arm with a folded towel or cloth to keep it out of contact with the windshield.
- To reduce adhesion, apply silicone lubricant to all door seals and body wax to the painted surface where the door seals meet.
- Cover the body with a breathable covering made of a "porous material" such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, can build up moisture and damage the paint.
- If possible, start the engine for a while regularly (preferably once every month). If the vehicle has been parked for a year or more, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for comprehensive maintenance.

Hood

Opening the Hood

1. Shift to Park or Neutral and the EPB is engaged. Pull the hood release lever on the left under the dashboard twice, the hood will pop up slightly and can be opened manually.



2. Lifting the hood over the balance position and letting go will allow the hood to spring to the maximum angle.



Closing the Hood

1. Lower the hood past the balance position, then press it down slightly and release to close it.
2. After closing the hood, check whether the latch is securely locked.



WARNING

- Ensure that the hood is closed and locked firmly. Otherwise, the hood may suddenly open during driving, resulting in an accident.
- Do not force down the hood.
- Do not close the hood with a single hand, as this may concentrate the force in one area and cause damage to the hood.
- Do not press the front edge of the hood to prevent damage to the vehicle.

Engine Maintenance

Engine Maintenance Information

- If the engine do not be started for a long time, the canister may be in saturation. The canister desorption should be regularly completed to avoid the risk of fuel leakage.
- If the vehicle runs in EV mode for a long time, the engine may be automatically started by itself till the load of canister turns to be normal.

Engine Oil

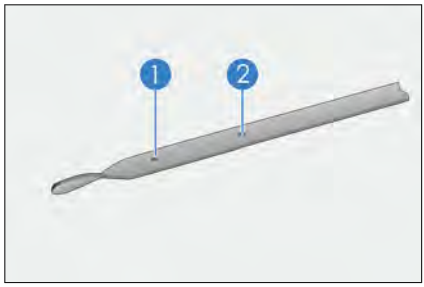
- Be sure to use engine oil with right specifications.
- When purchasing engine oil, check the oil specifications marked on the packaging container, which must conform to the using regulations for this vehicle.

Recommended engine oil

- Engine oil plays an important role in ensuring the performance and service life of the engine, so high-quality purified engine oil should be used. It is recommended that you choose BYD original engine oil.
- Engine oil consumption is related to driving habits, weather conditions, and road conditions. The engine oil consumption rate of new engines may be higher.

Check engine oil

1. Park the vehicle on a level road, start the engine till it reaches the normal working temperature, and then shut down the engine.
2. After shutdown for 10 minutes, remove the cover plate on the right side, pull out the oil dipstick, observe the oil level and oil condition, and check whether the oil level is between ① and ②. Add or replace oil as required.
3. Insert the oil dipstick back.



- When the low oil pressure warning light illuminates, please add oil in time.

WARNING

- Be careful not to splash oil on other vehicle components.
- The engine oil, engine components, and exhaust system are high-temperature components, which may cause burns. Be careful and wear protective clothing when working in the front compartment.
- Long-time or frequent contact with used engine oil causes skin diseases. Use soapy water and clean water to wash the oil on the skin.

Engine Cylinder Cleaning

In severe cold areas, failure to start the engine may cause engine cylinder flooding, so it is necessary to carry out cylinder cleaning:

1. When the OK indicator stays on, the working mode is EV, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is not running, manually switch from Park to Neutral.

2. Confirm that the electronic parking brake is engaged. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.

Coolant System

Coolant Selection

① Engine coolant expansion tank

② Motor controller coolant expansion tank

- The liquid level in the coolant expansion tank is required to be between the Maximum (MAX) and Minimum (MIN) lines.



- Refill coolant to the MAX line if the level is below the MIN line. Check the cooling system for leakage.
- Use the same type of coolant as the one used originally. Fill up coolant into the cooling system based on ambient temperature. Different brands and types of coolant should not be mixed.
- Do not add any admixture as improper coolant will damage the cooling system.

CAUTION

- Do not use tap water, so as to avoid cooling system damage.

CAUTION

- Do not add any rust inhibitor or other additives to the cooling system, for they may be incompatible with the coolant or the motor components.
- Before opening the expansion tank, make sure that the engine, motor, high-voltage electronic control assembly, expansion tank cap, and radiator are all cooled down.
- Do not open the top cover of the under-hood PDB when adding the coolant.
- Fill the coolant with professional tools to prevent the liquid from flowing into the PDB.

Radiator and Condenser

If the radiator or condenser is very dirty or if you are unsure about their condition, it is recommended to take the vehicle to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

WARNING

- To prevent burns, do not touch the radiator or condenser when the engine is hot.
- To prevent damage to the radiator and condenser, do not operate them yourself.

Braking System

- Check the level in the fluid tank monthly, and change the brake fluid according to the travel time and mileage specified in Maintenance Schedule.
- Be sure to use the brake fluid of the same specifications as the original

brake fluid, and different types of brake fluid must not be mixed.

- The liquid level in the expansion tank should be kept between the maximum (MAX) and minimum (MIN) lines.
- If the level is below the MIN mark, check if the braking system leaks and the brake friction blocks are worn.



- Effects of high-altitude environments on brake fluid:
  - Atmospheric pressure decreases as altitude increases, which may increase the air content in the brake fluid and cause the brake warning light (①) to illuminate. Before driving in high-altitude areas, have the intelligent power braking system properly bled at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If the braking system is not bled before driving in high-altitude areas, the brake pedal may feel soft and braking distance may increase during driving. In severe cases, vehicle power may be limited. Drive with caution.

Washer System

- During normal use, check the liquid level of the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly.
- If the windshield washer is used frequently, the level of the washer reservoir should be checked more frequently.



- High quality windshield washer fluid should be added to improve stain removal and prevent freezing in cold weather.
- When refilling the washer fluid, use a clean cloth dipped in the windshield washer fluid to clean the windshield wiper blade. This helps keep the wiper blade in good condition.

CAUTION

- Do not inject vinegar-water solution into the windshield washer reservoir.
- It is recommended to use certified windshield washer fluid.

Fuel Filter

Replace the fuel filter according to the travel time and mileage specified in the maintenance schedule.

- When the fuel is dirty or contaminated, it is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 10,000 km or six months, as the filter is more likely to be blocked.
- It is recommended to replace the fuel filter at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. Because there is pressure in the fuel system, if all the

oil lines are not properly handled, the fuel may spill out and cause danger.

- If you have used more than one barrel of impure fuel, the filter should be changed earlier.
- If the filter is blocked by dirt, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection or replacement of the filter.

A/C System

- The A/C system is a closed system, and any important maintenance work should be performed by professionals from a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
- The following practices help ensure that the A/C system works effectively.
  - Check the radiator and A/C condenser regularly. Remove leaves, insects, and dust from the front surface. These deposits will hinder the air flow and reduce the cooling effect. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.
  - In cold months, turn the A/C on once a week for at least 10 minutes to circulate the lubricating oil in the refrigerant unit.
- If A/C cooling efficiency decreases, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for maintenance.

CAUTION

- Whenever the A/C system is maintained, the maintenance station should use a refrigerant recycling system.
- The system can recycle refrigerant to avoid environmental pollution

CAUTION

caused by directly discharging refrigerant.

Wiper Blades

Wiper Blades Maintenance

The blade strip, made of synthetic rubber, is a vulnerable part. Various service environment of the vehicle and usage habits of drivers can damage the blades. Therefore, please observe the following to ensure the service life of blades and driving safety:

- Do not use a blade to remove ice from the windshield surface. Use a customized ice scraper.
- Do not scrape the windshield surface if it is dirty, greasy or waxy.
- Keep the windshield surface clean. Do not scrape dust, sand, insects, or foreign bodies on the windshield surface.
- During vehicle washing and body paint maintenance, there is no need to wax the windshield, as the wax layer reflects light in bad light, affecting the line of sight and driving safety. After washing the vehicle, rinse the blade with plain water, and use special windshield wax cleaner to remove the wax layer on the windshield.
- To prevent excessive water pressure from damaging the blades, do not wash the blades directly with a water jet.

Maintenance Rules

- Clean the windshield and the blade regularly (preferably once a week or once every two weeks).

- Wipe the wiper regularly (preferably once a day or once every two days). When using a blade to wipe the windshield, keep the windshield fully wet (when there is no rain, the washer liquid must be sprayed in advance).
- Clean the windshield with a special windshield washer fluid.
- Promptly clean mud and insect carcasses stuck to the windshield with a rag.
- When there are marks on the windshield caused by gravel, maintenance should be carried out timely (it is recommended that windshield repair resin products should be used and the windshield should be replaced if marks are too large or too many.)
- Replace the wiper blades regularly, preferably once every six months.
- When cleaning the windshield, raise the wiper arm in advance. The specific operation method is as follows:

  1. On infotainment touchscreen, go to ⚙ → **Drive** → **Overhaul** to enable front/rear wiper maintenance. The wipers rotate out.
  2. Grasp the upper end of the wiper arm and carefully lift the wiper arm and blade assembly.

Tires

- For safe driving, tires must be made and sized to fit the vehicle, with good tread and standard tire pressure.
- The following pages provide details on how to check tire pressure, damage to and wear of tires, and the operating method for tire transposition.

⚠ WARNING

- Using tires with excessive wear or insufficient/excessive pressure can result in accidents, severe injury, or death.
- Please follow all instructions in this manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

Tire Inflation

- Keep tires properly inflated to provide the best combination of maneuverability, tread life, and driving comfort.
- Under-inflated tires can cause uneven tire wear, affect steerability and energy consumption, and are prone to leakage due to overheating.
- Over-inflated tires reduce riding comfort and are prone to damage from uneven roads. In severe cases, the risk of tire bursting poses severe threats to the safety of the entire vehicle. Over-inflation will also cause uneven wear and tear of tires, affecting tire service life.
- The vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure gauge. When tires are cold, you can decide whether to replenish tire pressure according to the tire pressure values displayed on the instrument cluster.
- Tire pressure should be measured while tires are at ambient temperatures. This means that it should be measured at least three hours after stop. If you must drive the vehicle before the tire pressure is measured, tires can still be considered at ambient temperatures as long as the traveled distance is not more than 1.6 km.

- It is normal that tire pressure reading measured while tires are hot (after travel of several kilometers) is 30-40 kPa (0.3-0.4 kgf/cm²) higher than when tires are cold. In that case, do not deflate tires in order to achieve the specified cold tire pressure reading; otherwise, the tire pressure will be insufficient.

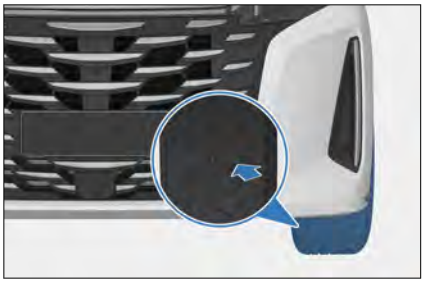
REMINDER

- The recommended cold tire pressure is indicated on the label affixed to the driver's door frame.

- As leakage is usually very slow, the leaks should be carefully identified as soon as the tire begins to depressurize.

Tire Inspection

- Whenever checking tire inflation, check tires for damage, foreign body piercing and wear.
  - Replace the tire if bumps, or tread or side damage are found. Tires must be replaced if any of the case happens.
  - Replace the tire if there are cracks on its side or if its fabric or cord can be seen.
  - Replace tires with excessive tread wear.



- Wear marks are cast inside tire treads. When the tread is worn at this point, a band mark is shown across the tread, indicating the tread thickness is less than 1.6 mm. The adhesion of tires worn to this extent is very small on wet roads.
- When the tread is worn to the point where the wear mark is exposed, there is serious performance loss, and the tires must be replaced.

Tire Maintenance

- In addition to proper inflation, proper wheel alignment also helps reduce tread wear.
- If uneven tire wear is found, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider and check the wheel alignment.
- Although the vehicle has been balanced in the factory, it may need to be re-balanced after running for a period of time.
- If there is some kind of continuous vibration at high vehicle speeds (above 80 km/h), but not at low vehicle speeds, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire checks.
- If a tire has been repaired, be sure to re-balance it.
- When installing a new tire or replacing a new wheel, always perform tire balancing.
- If dirt accumulates on the wheel rim, use a neutral detergent to remove it as soon as possible, then rinse thoroughly with clean water.

CAUTION

- Improper wheel balancers can become loose and fall off, which damages the vehicle or surrounding objects during vehicle travel.

CAUTION

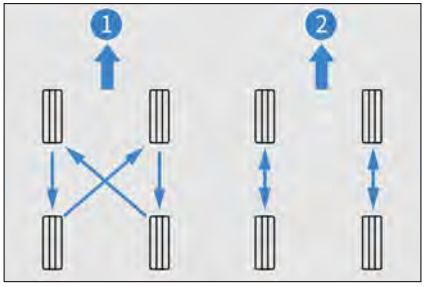
- Improper wheel balancers damage the aluminium rims of the vehicle. Therefore, it is recommended to use original wheel balancers.

Tire Rotation

- In order to make tires wear the same and prolong their service life, it is recommended to regularly (no more than 10,000 km) check the wear of the tire inner and outer tread and rotate the tires and conduct four-wheel alignment, inspection and adjustment if necessary.
- Do not rotate tires when a spare tire* is used for the vehicle.
- After tire replacement, go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for tire pressure matching.
- When purchasing replacement tires, you may find that some tires are "directional", which can only be rotated in one direction. If directional tires are used, only the front and rear wheels can be swapped when rotating tires.
- Conduct the rotation as shown:

  ① Non-directional tires and wheels

  ② Directional tires and wheels



Replacing Tires and Wheels

- Original tires maximize performance, while providing the best combination of maneuverability, driving comfort and service life.
- Go to a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for replacement of original tires.
- Replacement of tires with different sizes, road ranges, rated speeds and maximum cold pressures (marked on the tire side) or mixed use of radial tires and diagonal tires can reduce braking ability, driving force (ground adhesion) and steering accuracy.
- The installation of unsuitable tires can affect the maneuverability and stability of the vehicle, and may lead to accidents.
- Replace four tires at the same time whenever possible. If this is impossible or unnecessary, replace front or rear tires at the same time. Do not replace only one tire; otherwise it will seriously affect the maneuverability of the vehicle.
- ABS works by comparing wheel speed. When replacing a tire, use a tire of the same size as the original tire. The size and structure of the tire can affect wheel speed and may lead to uncoordinated system operation.
- If the wheel needs to be replaced, ensure that the specifications of the new wheel match those of the original wheel. New wheels are available for purchase at BYD authorized dealer or service providers. Please consult a BYD authorized dealer or service provider before replacing the wheels.

WARNING

- Please observe the following precautions to ensure proper vehicle maneuverability and control.
  - Do not mix radial tires, bias belted tires, or diagonal ply tires on the vehicle.
  - Do not use tires with dimensions other than those recommended by the manufacturer.

Fuses

All vehicle circuits are provided with fuses to prevent short circuit or overloading.

- The under-hood PDB is located beside the left fender of the engine compartment.
  - Remove the upper cover of the front compartment fuse box, and turn over it to view the fuse box label.
- The dashboard fuse box is located in the shield under the left dashboard.
- The positive fuse box is under the driver's seat and beside the low-voltage battery.
- The rear compartment fuse box* is located inside the left side panel.

REMINDER

- Do not use fuses with amperage higher than the rated ampere value or any other solution to replace the fuses, as this can cause serious damage or even a fire.

- Replacement of blown fuses with ones of higher amperage can significantly increase the likelihood of damage to the electrical system.
- If there is no spare fuse of the same amperage, use a fuse with lower amperage instead.

07 WHEN FAULTS OCCUR

When Faults Occur.....250

When Faults Occur

Reflective Vest

- Reflective Vest is stored in glove box in front passenger side.
- In case of emergency, always wear the reflective vest properly before you check for faults or handle accidents to ensure your safety.

If Smart Key Battery Is Exhausted

If the smart key indicator does not flash and the vehicle cannot be started using the start function, the smart key battery may be exhausted. It is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for battery change as soon as possible. In this case, you may start the vehicle in no power mode.

CAUTION

- Do not expose the smart key to high temperatures.
- Do not hit or slam the key with hard objects.
- Check for nearby radio stations, substations or airport radio transmitters that may interfere with the normal operation of electronic smart keys.
- After locking the vehicle and arming the anti-theft alarm system, keep the key away from the vehicle if you do not use the vehicle; otherwise the automatic card finding of the vehicle will consume the power of the low-voltage battery and the smart key.

1. Use the mechanical key to unlock the vehicle.
2. Put the smart key close to the no-power sign on the auxiliary dashboard.
3. Press the START/STOP button and the brake pedal to start the vehicle.



If a High Voltage Fault Occurs

If the vehicle experiences a fault and the instrument panel displays "Low-voltage electrical system failure. Please park safely and contact a service center," immediately pull over to a safe location and contact a BYD Auto Authorized Service Center for assistance.

If the Vehicle Cannot Be Powered on

Simple Checks

Before the inspection, make sure that the vehicle is started according to the correct procedures (see ***P135***) and check whether the fuel is sufficient. Also, check if the spare key can start the vehicle. If it can be started, the original key may have been damaged. In this case, have the key checked by a BYD authorized dealer or service provider. If all keys are unusable, there may be a fault with the keys or the smart key system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

If the vehicle does not respond after pressing the key

1. Press and hold the microswitch for 10 seconds to see the response of the vehicle or the instrument cluster.
2. If there is no response from the vehicle or the instrument cluster, check whether the low-voltage battery connectors are tight.
3. If the low-voltage battery has been tightened, turn on the front interior lights. If the interior lights do not turn on or are dim, the low-voltage battery is low.
4. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

If the starter motor cranks the engine at normal speed but the engine will not start:

1. Restart the vehicle.
2. If the engine cannot be started, the cause may be engine oil spillage due to repeated starts, failure of the BMS battery manager module, or failure of starting-related modules such as the generator module.
3. If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

Starting an Engine with Oil Spillage

- If the engine fails to start, repeatedly attempting to start it may lead to fuel leakage.
- If engine hydrolock occurs, you can manually perform the following steps:

  1. When the OK indicator stays on, the working mode is EV, the vehicle is in ECO mode, and the engine is not running, manually switch from Park to Neutral.
  2. Confirm that the electronic parking brake is engaged. Press the brake and accelerator pedals to the deepest positions at the same time, and wait for several seconds to activate the cylinder cleaning.

- If the engine has been started for five seconds and still cannot start, wait for several minutes and start it again.
- If the engine still cannot be started, adjustment or repair is required. In this case, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- If the engine fails to start continuously, and the prompt "Engine start failed, please drive to safe area and stop to check" is displayed on the instrument cluster, it is recommended not to restart the engine, otherwise the generator and wiring system will overheat.

If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving

- Maintain the lane position and gradually slow down the vehicle. Carefully drive the vehicle off the road to a safe place.
- Turn on the Hazard Warning Light.
- Please try to restart the engine.

If the Engine is Overheated

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on and power loss

is found, it indicates that the engine is overheated, and the following procedures should be followed:

1. Drive the vehicle away from heavy traffic and park it in a safe place. Turn on the hazard warning light, press the "P" button and ensure the EPB is engaged. If the A/C is used, turn off the A/C and place a warning triangle at the corresponding position behind the vehicle according to the regulations.
2. If the "high engine coolant temperature" warning light turns on, stop the engine. If there is a sound and the coolant sprays out in the engine compartment, open the engine hood after the steam disappears. If no coolant is sprayed, confirm whether the cooling fan is working before and after the engine stops. If the fan is not working, turn off the power.

WARNING

- To avoid personal injury, keep the hood closed until no coolant flows out. The flow of coolant indicates high pressure.

3. Check the radiator, hose and vehicle underneath for obvious coolant leakage.

WARNING

- When the engine is running, keep hands and clothes at a certain distance from the rotating fan and engine pulley.

4. In case of coolant leakage, stop the engine immediately and contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for help.
5. If there is no obvious leakage, check the coolant expansion tank. If coolant is insufficient, be sure to open the expansion tank cover after the engine coolant temperature drops to the normal value. When the engine is running, add coolant into the expansion tank to the upper scale mark, tighten its cover, and start the engine for two to three cycles (start the fan without turning on the A/C). After the coolant temperature drops to the normal value, check the coolant level again. If necessary, add more coolant to the appropriate scale. A serious loss of coolant indicates a leakage in the system. In this case, contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider for inspection immediately.

WARNING

- To avoid serious injury caused by high-temperature steam and liquid ejection, do not open the expansion tank cover when the engine and radiator are hot.

If the Vehicle Needs Towing

If the vehicle needs towing, it is recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider, a professional towing service, or the organization you joined for roadside assistance.

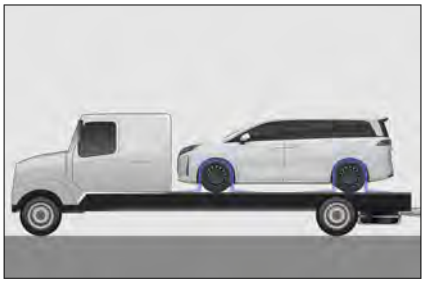
CAUTION

- The vehicle must not be towed by other vehicles using only ropes or chains.

Recommended towing method:

- Flatbed device
  - If the vehicle fails and needs towing, a flatbed is recommended. When the vehicle is being towed, keep its four wheels off the ground. Towing the vehicle on front or rear wheels

alone may damage high-voltage components.



CAUTION

- When moving a vehicle on a flat trailer, make sure that the vehicle being moved is properly secured to prevent it from sliding back.
- It is recommended to use professional tire straps and tighteners, and over-the-wheel binding is recommended for securing moved vehicles.
- When fixing the vehicle, do not pass the fixtures such as straps and ropes through the wheels or tie them on the chassis, suspension and other body parts to prevent damaging the vehicle.
- When transporting a vehicle, make sure that the wheels of the moved vehicle cannot turn to avoid damage to the vehicle.

Tow Eye

- The tow eye cover is at the lower right corner of the front bumper, with the installation position shown in the diagram.

1. Use a screwdriver to gently pry the tow eye cover open from the notched side.
2. Install the tow eye in the tow eye opening.



- If the vehicle needs rescue, it is recommended to call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- In emergency rescue situations where the vehicle needs to be towed, observe the following to avoid vehicle damage or personal injuries.
  - The towing vehicle must be in good conditions and the towed vehicle in Neutral; the tow speed must be no more than 5 km/h.
  - Never use jerking actions to pull the vehicle.
  - The towed vehicle must not carry any person except for the driver.
  - Both towing and towed vehicles must have their hazard warning lights on.
  - To avoid damages to the vehicle, only the in-vehicle tow eye can be used.
  - The distance between the towing and towed vehicles must be more than four meters but less than ten meters.
  - The width and weight of the towed vehicle must not be greater than those of the towing vehicle.
  - When towing the vehicle, ensure its surroundings are unobstructed and have enough space and no person is close to the towing device.
  - When freeing the vehicle, control to make it travel in the direction of tow

force. Dragging the vehicle from the side or vertically is prohibited.

- The towed vehicle must be controlled by a driver inside the cabin, with the steering and braking systems in normal conditions.

WARNING

- Never rescue a stuck or high-centered vehicle with tow eyes. Call a professional rescue or the customer service number.
- If the steering or braking system of the towed vehicle fails, contact a professional rescue or call the customer service number. Do not tow the vehicle directly.

If a Tire Goes Flat or Is Underinflated

- In case of a flat tire, slow down, keep straight, and drive off the busy road to a safe place.
- Park on solid, flat ground and avoid motorway forks.
- Ensure the vehicle is in "P" (Park) gear and the electronic parking brake is engaged.
- Power off the vehicle and turn on the hazard warning light.
- Be sure to have all passengers get off the vehicle and ask them to go to a safe place away from crowded traffic.
- To prevent slipping, secure the vehicle by wedging the tire diagonally against the flat tire.

CAUTION

- Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Even a short distance of

CAUTION

driving with a flat tire can cause irreparable damage.

In-Vehicle Tools

- In-Vehicle Tools include:

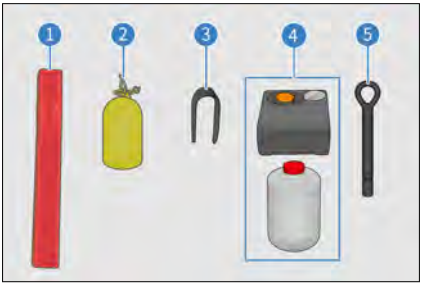
  ① Warning triangle

  ② Reflective vest

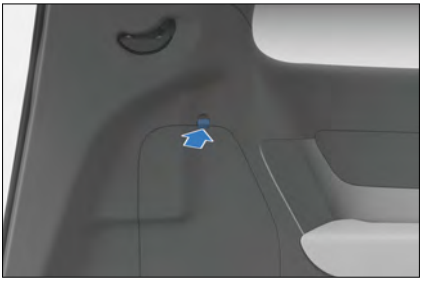
  ③ Lug nut cover remover

  ④ Tire repair kit

  ⑤ Tow Eye



- Tow Eye, lug nut cover remover, and tire repair kit assembly are stored in tool box located in the left side of the trunk.



- Reflective vest is stored in glove box.
- The warning triangle is stored beneath the lower shield panel within the trunk door.

CAUTION

- In an emergency where you need to service the vehicle yourself, you must know how to use these in-vehicle tools and their locations.
- After using the in-vehicle tools, store properly in original positions to prevent loss or unintended incidents.

Take out warning triangle

- The warning triangle is stored beneath the lower shield panel within the trunk door.
- Loosen the knob on the lid of the warning triangle, open the lid, and then remove the warning triangle.



Placing the warning triangle

REMINDER

- When parking for repair, place the warning triangle correctly as per local regulations. Ensure the red side is facing oncoming traffic to warn other drivers.
- After using the warning triangle, put it back for future use.

The warning triangle is used to warn vehicles coming from behind and to avoid collisions due to high speed or late braking.

How to use the warning triangle:

1. Take the warning triangle out of its box.
2. Attach the ends to form a triangle.
3. Mount the supports as shown.



Using Tire Repair Kit

- The tire sealant is used to seal small cuts, especially tread cuts or punctures. It is just an emergency solution for you to drive to the nearest service center, and only for short emergency stretches, even if the tire is not deflated.
- The tire repair kit is located in the boot. Remove the interior trim panel to access it.
  - Tire repair kit includes: Tire sealant, air compressor, tire repair patch with maximum speed rating, and user instructions.

WARNING

- The tire sealant is only suitable for repairing minor damages of tires. If a wheel is damaged, do not use the tire sealant.
- Tire sealant is highly flammable and harmful to health. Take necessary precautions to prevent fire and avoid contact with skin, eyes, and clothing; keep away

WARNING

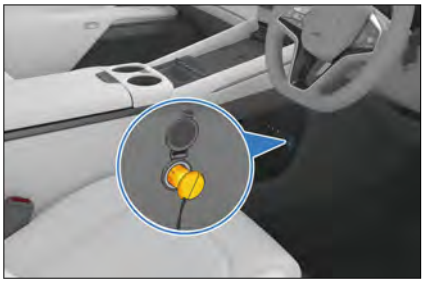
from children; and do not inhale its vapor.

In case of contact with tire sealant:

- If tire sealant comes into contact with the skin or gets into the eyes, thoroughly flush the affected body part immediately with plenty of clean water.
- Change contaminated clothing immediately.
- In case of an allergic reaction, seek medical attention immediately.
- If tire sealant is ingested by accident, rinse mouth thoroughly and drink plenty of water immediately. Do not induce vomiting, but seek medical attention immediately.

Using the tire repair kit

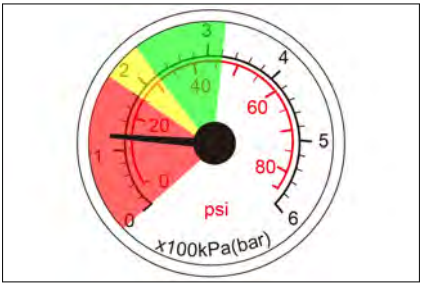
- Refer to the labels on the inflator for usage of the tire repair kit.
- If the inflator needs to be connected to a power source, plug the inflator into the vehicle's 12 V socket, start the vehicle, and turn on the inflator. The tire sealant is then filled through the inflator hose into the tire along with air.



WARNING

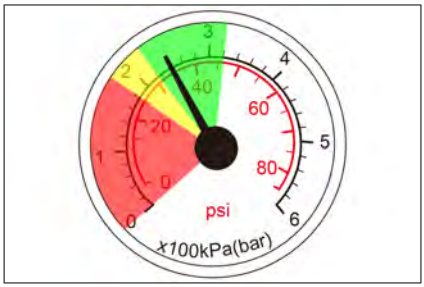
- Make sure the inflator switch is off before plugging into the 12V socket in the vehicle.
- Do not use the inflator continuously for more than 10 minutes at a time.
- The power plug must not exceed the rated voltage and rated power marked on the backup power source; otherwise, safety hazards may occur.
- Start vehicle outdoors or in well-ventilated areas (e.g., inside buildings), running engine in unventilated spaces may cause suffocation.

- Observe the tire pressure reading on the inflator.
- If the tire pressure does not reach 180 kPa within 10 minutes (red area shown in the illustration), turn off the inflator. You are recommended to contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.



- When the tire pressure is between 180–320 kPa (1.8–3.2 bar) (green and yellow areas shown in the illustration), remove the kit as soon as possible and drive at a speed below 80 km/h within 1 minute, with the furthest driving distance not exceeding 10 km, to

let the tire sealant evenly distributed within the tire.



- Stop and observe tire pressure on the instrument panel.
  - If the tire pressure is greater than 220 kPa (2.2 bar), drive to the nearest service center at a speed below 80 km/h.
  - If the tire pressure is between 130–220 kPa (1.3–2.2 bar), repeat the process to fill the tire sealant into the tire and observe the tire pressure gauge reading on the inflator.
  - If the tire pressure does not reach 130 kPa (1.3 bar), contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

CAUTION

- Using the tire repairing kit on damaged tires is only an emergency solution. Be sure to replace the damage tires at a professional repair center, ideally a BYD authorized dealer or service provider, as soon as possible and inform the technicians that tire sealant has been used.
- Avoid hard acceleration and high-speed turns.
- Do not exceed the 80 km/h maximum speed limit. Do not drive further if the vehicle experiences strong vibration, unstable performance, or noise.
- When the tire sealant is about to expire (see the label on the canister for exact date), replace it with a new one.
- After repairing a tire with the tire repair kit, it is recommended that you purchase new tire sealant at a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.

08 SPECIFICATIONS

Vehicle Data..... 260
Other Information..... 264
Declarations of Conformity..... 268

Vehicle Data

Vehicle Data

Dimensions

Item	Parameter
Length (mm)	5145
Width (mm, excluding side mirrors)	1970
Height (mm)	1805
Wheelbase (mm)	3045
Front track (mm)	1676
Rear track (mm)	1683
Front overhang (mm)	990
Rear overhang (mm)	1110
Approach angle (°)	14
Departure angle (°)	16

Vehicle mass

Item	Parameter	
Model	A	B
Curb weight (kg)	2450	2650
Front axle load (kg)	1350	1452
Rear axle load (kg)	1100	1198
Max. allowable total mass (kg)	Seven seaters: 3074 Eight seaters: 3156	3274
Front axle load at max. allowable total mass (kg)	Seven seaters: 1448 Eight seaters: 1458	1541
Rear axle load at max. allowable total mass (kg)	Seven seaters: 1626 Eight seaters: 1698	1733

Item	Parameter	
Number of occupants (persons)	7/8	7

Engine

Item	Parameter
Engine model	BYD472ZQB
Engine type	In-cylinder direct injection, inline four-cylinder, four-stroke, spark-ignition, water-cooled, double overhead camshaft
Displacement (L)	1.498
Rated power of engine (kW/rpm)	115/5500
Max. net engine power (kW/rpm)	110/5500
Max. torque (N · m/rpm)	225/(2500-4500)
Emission standard	Euro 6d

Drive motor

Item	Parameter
Model	TZ210XYD
Type	Permanent magnet synchronous motor
Drive type	Front-wheel drive
Rated power/speed/torque (kW/rpm/N·m)	90/6600/130
Peak power/revolving speed/torque (kW/rpm/N·m)	200/20000/315

Economy and power performance

Item	Parameter	
Model	A	B
Fuel consumption L/100km(WLTC 14°)	7.1	7.3
Maximum design speed (km/h)	180	180
Maximum gradeability (%)	30	30

REMINDER

- The actual energy consumption depends on factors such as vehicle conditions, road conditions, and driving habits.

Wheels and tires

Item	Parameter
Tire specification	235/60 R18
Tire pressure (kPa)	290
Wheel dynamic balance requirement (g)	⩽10

Wheel alignment values (at curb weight)

Item	Parameter
Front camber (°)	-0.59±0.75
Total front toe-in (°)	0.2±0.16
Kingpin inclination angle (°)	12.92±0.75
Kingpin caster angle (°)	4.96±0.75
Rear camber (°)	-0.5±0.5
Total rear toe-in (°)	0.14±0.16

Braking system

Item	Parameter
Free stroke of brake pedal (mm)	1–5
Standard thickness of front brake disc (mm)	30
Minimum thickness of front brake disc (mm)	28
Standard thickness of rear brake disc (mm)	20
Minimum thickness of rear brake disc (mm)	18
Standard thickness of front friction plate (mm)	11
Minimum thickness of front friction plate (mm)	2

Item	Parameter
Standard thickness of rear friction plate (mm)	8.5
Minimum thickness of rear friction plate (mm)	2.5

High-voltage battery

Item	Parameter	
Model	A	B
Type	Lithium iron phosphate battery	Lithium iron phosphate battery
Rated capacity of high-voltage battery (Ah)	54	78.4

Seats

Item	Parameter
Forward and backward moving spaces for front seats (seat cushion depth measured)	60 mm forward from the farthest slide rail stroke
Seatback angle of front seats (cushion depth measured)	23°
Normal service conditions of front seatbacks	20° forward and 68° backward from the designated position; 200 mm forward and 60 mm backward from the slide rail; slide rail inclination: 2.5°
Forward and backward moving spaces for second-row seats (seat cushion depth measured)	180 mm forward from the farthest slide rail stroke
Seatback angle of second-row seats (cushion depth measured)	25°
Normal service conditions of second-row seatbacks	26° forward and 43° backward from the designated position; 200 mm forward and 180 mm backward from the slide rail; slide rail inclination: 3°
Forward and backward moving spaces for third-row seats (cushion depth measured)	100 mm forward from the farthest slide rail stroke
Seatback angle of the third-row seats (cushion depth measured)	30°

Item	Parameter
Normal service conditions of the third-row seatbacks	Designed to tilt forward 100°, backward 8°, and flip the seat cushion backward 163°.

Recommended oil type and amount

Item	Parameter
Engine oil type BYD472ZQB	SP 0W-16
BYD472ZQB Engine oil amount (L)	4
EHS special transmission gear oil type	EHSF-2LV
EHS special transmission gear oil amount (L)	3.2±0.1
Brake fluid type	HZY6/DOT4
Brake fluid amount (mL)	1.1 L, within 0-5 mm of the MAX mark
Engine coolant type	50% ethylene glycol coolant
Engine coolant amount (L)	9
Motor and motor controller coolant type	50% ethylene glycol coolant
Motor and motor controller coolant amount (L)	7.1±0.5

CAUTION

- The recommended oil types have been tested and approved by BYD. Using other oil types may compromise vehicle performance, and could cause malfunctions or damage to components.

Other Information

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

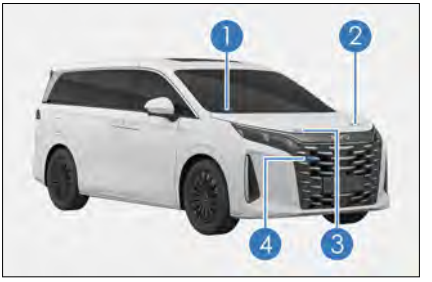
Positions of attached VIN:

① On the lower right corner of the windshield pillar dashboard

② On the rear side of the motor

③ On the right of the hood lock ring

④ On the front bumper beam

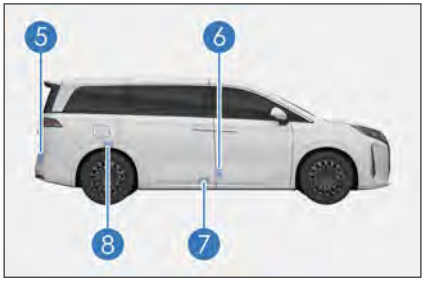


⑤ On the inner panel of the trunk lid

⑥ On the lower right corner of the front right door

⑦ On the inner side of the right rear door sill lip.

⑧ On the right rear wheel envelope



Position of engraved VIN:

VIN is engraved on the lower of the driver's seat. After connecting the VDS, the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) can be found in the upper right corner of the screen for the corresponding model. For details, please refer to the VDS operation manual.



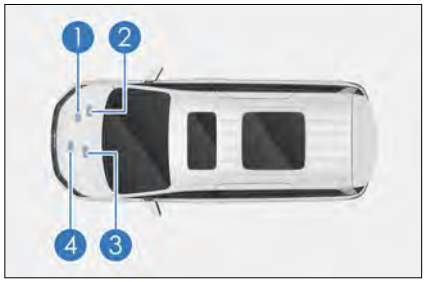
Model and Serial Number of Engine and Drive Motor

① The model and serial number of the engine are attached on the part (intercooler) above the front end of the engine.

② The model and serial number of the engine are engraved on the engine block.

③ The model and serial number of the front drive motor are engraved on the bottom of the front drive motor.

④ The model and serial number of the front drive motor are attached on the inner panel of the hood.



Vehicle Nameplate

The vehicle nameplate is located below the lock loop on the right B-pillar.



Warning Labels

The airbag warning label is printed on the front passenger's sun visor.



The tire pressure label is attached below the right B-pillar lock ring.



The refrigerant refill and cooling fan labels are attached on inner hood panel.



The gasoline indication label is attached on the inner side of the fuel door.



The charge port door and charging warning label* is attached on the inside of the charge port door.



Warnings on Strut Mechanisms*

The strut mechanism of this vehicle contains high-pressure gas and is potentially dangerous. Do not disassemble it yourself. Lables on these products are defined as follows:

Lable	Definition
	Warning
	Pressurized cylinder

Lable	Definition
	Refer to owner's manual
	No open flame
	Not to be serviced by users
	No discarding (Note: Contact a BYD authorized dealer or service provider.)
	No shaking or cranking
	No stepping on

Transponder Mounting Position

The transponder mounting position is located in the upper right of the front windshield.



CAUTION

- Do not overlap the sticker transponder with the glass frame or other objects.

Declarations of Conformity

Declarations of Conformity

Smart Key

	Uzbekistan Model: MC5-92
	EU countries Model: MC5-92
	Brazil Model: MC5-92 This equipment is not entitled to protection against harmful interference and does not cause interference to duly authorized systems.

Corner MmWave Radars

	EU countries Certificate ID: T2021.08.0001

Front MmWave Radars

	EU countries Certificate ID: T2022.01.0005

NBTC Compliance



Radar



Thailand

Model: DiLink 100F

เครื่องโทรคมนาคมและอุปกรณ์นี้ มีความสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานหรือข้อกำหนดทางเทคนิคของคณะกรรมการกิจการกระจายเสียงกิจการโทรทัศน์ และกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติ (กสทช.)

เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้มีระดับการแผ่คลื่นแม่เหล็กไฟฟ้าสอดคล้องตามมาตรฐานความปลอดภัยต่อสุขภาพของมนุษย์จากการใช้เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมที่คณะกรรมการกิจการกระจายเสียงกิจการโทรทัศน์และกิจการโทรคมนาคมแห่งชาติ (กสทช.) กำหนด

Numerics

12V Auxiliary Power..... 217

A

A/C Control Panel, Car Speakers, Dashboard, Control Panel and Switches..... 234
A/C Settings..... 206
About BYD App..... 207
Account Registration..... 207
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System (AVAS)*..... 171
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*.... 147
Adaptive Front Light (AFL)*..... 162
Adjusting Front Seat with Power.... 75
Adjusting Head Supports..... 84
Adjusting Second-Row Aviation-Style Seat*..... 77
Adjusting Second-Row Seats Manually*..... 76
Adjusting the Steering Wheel Manually..... 89
Adjusting Third-Row Seat Head Supports..... 85
Adjusting Third-Row Seats*..... 81
Airbag Overview..... 16
Airbag Triggering Conditions..... 19
Airbag Types..... 17
Anti-theft Alarm System..... 32
Around View Monitor (AVM)*..... 172
Auto Power On/Off..... 136
Automatic Vehicle Hold (AVH)..... 143
Automatic Vehicle Washing..... 233
Auxiliary Handles..... 216

B

Bill Box..... 212
Blind Spot Assist (BSA) and Rear Assist*..... 165
Blowout Stability Control..... 139
Bluetooth Call..... 191
Braking System..... 242
Break-in Period..... 125
BYD Assistant*..... 191

C

Carpet..... 234
Carry luggage in the trunk..... 132
Carrying Luggage..... 131
Center Console Storage Compartment..... 212
Charging Port Immobilizer System.... 121
Charging Precautions..... 107
Charging Safety Warnings..... 106
Child Presence Detection (CPD)... 182
Child Protection Lock..... 73
Child Restraint Systems..... 22
Clothes Hooks..... 216
Coolant Selection..... 242

D

Data Collection and Processing..... 34
Declarations of Conformity..... 268
Discharging Instructions*..... 116
Disclosure of Personal Data to Authorities..... 37
DiSus-C*..... 138
Door Bins..... 212
Door Side Cup Holder..... 214
Doors and Windows..... 234
Driver Monitoring System (DMS).. 168
Driving Precautions..... 145
Driving Safety Precautions..... 127
Driving Safety Systems..... 177
Driving with Low Fuel Consumption 137

E

Emergency Call (E-Call)..... 101
Emergency Lane Keeping Assist (ELKA)*..... 160

Emergency Unlocking of the Charge Port..... 122
Emergency Vehicle Locking with Mechanical Key..... 66
EPB Switch..... 141

F

Fire Prevention..... 133
Forward Collision Warning (FCW) and Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB)* 154
Front A/C Operation Interface..... 202
Front Cross Traffic Alert (FCTA) and Front Cross Traffic Brake (FCTB)*. 157
Front Cubby..... 212
Front Seat Cup Holder..... 213
Front vents..... 206
Fuel Selection..... 128
Function Definitions..... 203
Fuse Location..... 248

G

Gear Shift Controls..... 140
General Charging Troubleshooting.... 109
Gestures and Responses..... 189
Glove Box..... 213
Google Assistant*..... 191
Grab Handles..... 216

H

Hazard Warning Light Switch..... 98
High-Voltage Battery..... 122

I

If a Tire Goes Flat..... 254
If the Engine Fails to Start While Driving..... 251
In-Vehicle Cinema System*..... 197
Indicators/Warning Lights..... 41
Infotainment Touchscreen..... 186
Installing Child Restraint Systems. 23
Intelligent Cruise Control (ICC)*... 151
Intelligent Power Braking System 177
Intelligent Speed Limit Control (ISLC)*..... 164
Interior Cleaning..... 234
Interior Light Switches..... 103
Interior Rearview Mirror..... 92
Introduction of Dual-Mode System Working Mode..... 28

K

Keys..... 54

L

Lane Departure Assist (LDA)*..... 158
LCD Instrument Cluster..... 40
Leather..... 235
Light Switches..... 94
Lights..... 238
Locking/Unlocking with Mechanical Key..... 58
Locking/Unlocking with Microswitch 60
Locking/Unlocking with Smart Key 59
Locking/Unlocking with the NFC Key*..... 61
Low-Voltage Battery..... 124

M

Maintenance Cycle and Items..... 224
Maintenance Plan..... 224
Manual Vehicle Washing..... 232
Memory System*..... 79
Model and Serial Number of Engine and Drive Motor..... 265
My Car*..... 192

O

Occupant Monitoring System (OMS) 169
Opening the Hood..... 240
Opening the Sliding Door by projection sensing..... 69
Opening the trunk by projection sensing..... 64
Opening with Door Control Button 59
Opening with Interior Door Handle 59
Ordinary Sunroof Maintenance*.. 238
OTA Updates*..... 190
Other Applications..... 192
Other Instrument Cluster Fault Prompts..... 50

P

Paint Maintenance Tips..... 231
Panoramic Canopy Maintenance. 239
Parking Assist System*..... 174
Phone Holder..... 215
Phone Projection*..... 193
Power Sliding Door Maintenance. 235
Power Window Switches..... 96
Power-Assisted Steering Mode Settings..... 89
Precautions for Dual-Mode System Working Mode..... 30

R

Raising/Lowering Windows with Microswitch..... 61
Raising/Lowering Windows with Smart Key..... 60
Rear Cubby*..... 213
Rear Screen Center*..... 201
Recycling the High-Voltage Battery 123
Refrigerator*..... 208
Refueling..... 128
Regenerative Braking Intensity Setting..... 119
Regular Maintenance Precautions.... 229
Replacing Wiper Blades..... 91
Risk of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Poisoning..... 132
Roof Vents*..... 207

S

Saving Fuel and Extending Vehicle Service Life..... 130
Scenario Mode*..... 188
SD Card Slot*..... 218
Seat Belt Emergency Locking Retractor (ELR) Function *..... 12
Seat Belt Maintenance..... 234
Seat Belt Overview..... 12
Seat Belt Reminders..... 15
Seat Heating and Ventilation System* 80
Seat Precautions..... 74
Seatback Pockets..... 215
Second-Row Control Panel*..... 102
Second-Row Cup Holder..... 214
Selecting Working Mode of Dual-Mode System..... 29
Self-Maintenance Precautions..... 236
Sentry Mode..... 33
Side Mirror Adjustment..... 93
Smart Access and Start System..... 71
Smart Charging..... 115
Snow Chains..... 147
Speakers Setting*..... 192
Specifications..... 260
Starting the Vehicle..... 135
Steering Wheel Switches..... 86
Streaming Interior Rearview Mirror* 92
Suggestions on Vehicle Use and Storage..... 127
Sun Visor..... 215
Sunroof Switch..... 98
Sunshade..... 99

T

Target SOC Setting..... 118
Third Row Seat Cup Holder*..... 214
Tire Pressure Monitoring System. 170
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR)*.... 163
Transponder Mounting Position.. 267
Tray Table*..... 220
Trunk Lid Emergency Unlocking.... 65
Trunk Seat Adjustment Switch*..... 83

U

USB Ports..... 217
Using AC Charging Piles*..... 112
Using DC Charging Piles*..... 114
Using Mode 2 Charging Cable*..... 110
Using Seat Belts..... 12

V

V2L External Discharging*..... 117
Vehicle Cleaning..... 232
Vehicle Corrosion Prevention..... 231
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 264
Vehicle Nameplate..... 265
Vehicle Servicing..... 230
Vehicle Storage Instructions..... 239

W

Wading into Water..... 132
Warning Labels..... 265
Warning Lights/Indicators Description..... 44
Window Control Switch on Passenger Side..... 97
Windshield Wipers and Washer..... 89
Winter Driving Precautions..... 146
Wiper Blades..... 244
Wireless Phone Charger*..... 218

Abbreviations

Abbreviations

Terminology	Full Name	Terminology	Full Name
ELR	Emergency Locking Retractor	ECU	Electronic Control Unit
ISOFIX	International Standards Organization Fix	SOC	State of Charge
ESC	Electronic Stability Controller	GPF	Gasoline Particulate Filter
EPB	Electronic Parking Brake	AVH	Auto Vehicle Hold
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control	FCW	Forward Collision Warning
AEB	Automatic Emergency Braking	LDA	Lane Departure Assist
LDW	Lane Departure Warning	LDP	Lane Departure Prevention
ELKA	Emergent Lane Keeping Assist	EPS	Electrical Power Steering
TSR	Traffic Sign Recognition	ISLC	Intelligent Speed Limit Control
DOW	Door Open Warning	RCW	Rear Collision Warning
RCTA	Rear Cross Traffic Alert	RCTB	Rear Cross Traffic Braking
BSD	Blind Spot Detection	ABS	Antilock Braking System
VDC	Vehicle Dynamics Control	TCS	Traction Control System
HHC	Hill Hold Control	HBA	Hydraulic Brake Assist
CDP	Controller Deceleration Parking	HDC	Hill Descent Control
MCB	Multi-Collision Brake	MAX	Maximum
MIN	Minimum	VIN	Vehicle Identification Number